Kraus'sche Kanzleiakten Oskar Sameks
Kodierrichtlinien

Ingo Börner
Vanessa Hannesschläger
Laura Untner
Stand: Mai 2021

1. Intro

In diesem Dokument werden die Kodierrichtlinien für TEI xml Dokumente beschrieben, die im Projekt *Intertextuality in the Legal Papers of Karl Kraus. A Scholarly Digital Edition* (FWF Projektnr. P 31138-G30, PI DDr.in Kathrina Prager) zur Anwendung kommen.

Dieses Projekt wird vom Ludwig Boltzmann Institut für Digital History (https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at) in Zusammenarbeit mit dem Austrian Centre for Digital Humanities and Cultural Heritage (ACDH-CH) der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften (https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at) und der Wienbibliothek im Rathaus (https://www.wienbibliothek.at) umgesetzt. Ziel des Projekts ist es, eine digitale Edition der Kanzleiakten aus der Kanzlei Oskar Samek zu erstellen, die die Fälle dokumentieren, in die Karl Kraus involviert war. Diese digitale Edition soll es ihren Nutzer*innen ermöglichen, den unterschiedlichen intertextuellen Bezügen in diesen Akten nachzuforschen.

Als Grundlage dient dabei einerseits das Vorgängerprojekt *Karl Kraus Online* (https://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at), andererseits die digitalisierte Fassung der Kanzleiakten in der digitalen Wienbibliothek (https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at). Diese beiden Quellen bauen auf der von Katharina Prager erstellten Ordnung der Bestandsliste des Kraus-Archivs der Wienbibliothek im Rathaus auf und orientieren sich an den Signaturen dieser Liste. Diese Ordnungslogik wird auch im vorliegenden Projekt als Ausgangsbasis übernommen. Ebenfalls eine wichtige Grundlage für die Editionsarbeit stellt die von Hermann Böhm erstellte, heute vergriffene Lese-Edition der Akten in vier Bänden dar (*Karl Kraus contra ...: die Prozeßakten der Kanzlei Oskar Samek in der Wiener Stadt- und Landesbibliothek, bearb. und kommentiert von Hermann Böhm, Wien, Wiener Stadt- u. Landesbibliothek, Bd. 1–4, 1995–1997*).

Im Rahmen des vorliegenden Projekts wird auf Basis der genannten Quellen für jedes erhaltene Einzeldokument im Archiv ein korrespondierendes TEI xml Dokument erstellt, in dem sich eine annotierte Transkription des Volltexts sowie alle relevanten Metadaten und Verweise auf Digitalisate des Archivdokuments befinden. (Darüberhinaus wird pro Fall ein weiteres TEI xml Dokument angelegt, in dem die entsprechenden Metadaten festgehalten und eine Liste der zum Fall gehörigen Einzeldokumente angelegt wird.) Wie genau diese TEI xml Dokumente entstehen und strukturiert sind, ist im Folgenden beschrieben.

2. Workflow

Der Workflow zur Erstellung eines Dokuments umfasst folgende Schritte:

- Auswahl des zu transkirbierenden Dokuments
- Transkribus - Upload, Erstellen der Transkription
- Bildzuordnung
- Erstellen des TEI Dokuments
- Bearbeiten des TEI Dokuments

3. Metadaten - des TEI Dokuments

Das Element <fileDesc> enthält die Metadaten zum elektronischen Dokument.

3.1. Titel, VerfasserIn, HerausgeberIn und weitere Beteiligte

<titleStmt> enthält Informationen zu Titel <title> und Verfasser <author>, sowie den Namen der/des verantwortlichen Herausgeber/in <editor>. Innerhalb von <respStmt> werden weitere Angaben zu an der Erstellung des Dokuments beteiligten Personen hinterlegt, bspw. dazu, wer das Dokument transkribiert und kodiert hat.

Ein Beispiel für ein <titleStmt>:

```
<titleStmt>
 <title>Brief Samek an Reichspost (verantw. Red. Karl Schiffleitner)</title>
 <author ref="https://pmb.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/entity/38909">Oskar Samek</author>
 <editor ref="#IL">Isabell Langkabel</editor>
 <respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/trc">Transkription</resp>
  <name ref="#IL">Isabell Langkabel</name>
 </respStmt>
 <respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/mrk">TEI-Encoding</resp>
  <name ref="#IB">Ingo Börner</name>
  <name ref="#VH">Vanessa Hannesschläger</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

Das Dokument wurde von 'Oskar Samek' verfasst und wird von 'Isabell Langkabel' hauptverantwortlich herausgegeben. Das von ihr transkribierte Dokument wurde von 'Ingo Börner' und 'Vanessa Hannesschläger' entsprechend den Kodierrichtlinien kodiert.

Das *ref* dient zur Verknüpfung mit einem zentral verwalteten Datensatz. Bspw. wird der Verfasser des Briefes, 'Oskar Samek' mittels *ref* mit dem entsprechenden Datensatz (https://pmb.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/entity/38909) in der PMB verlinkt.

Die Beiträge weiterer Personen (Transkription, Kodierung usw.) werden in <respStmt> erfasst. Die Tätigkeit <resp> wird über ein Attribut *ref* mit einem MARC Relator-Code versehen.

3.2. Herausgeber (Institutionen)

Im Element <publisher> im <publicationStmt> findet sich die Information zum Herausgeber des Dokuments. Im folgenden Beispiel sind es drei Institutionen. Das Element <availability> enthält im Element <licence> einen Verweis <ref> auf die Creative Commons-Lizenz, unter der die Daten bereitgestellt werden. Die <idno> Elemente geben interne und externe Identifier an.

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>
  <name>Austrian Centre for Digital Humanities and Cultural Heritage,
    Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften</name>
  <address>
   <street>Sonnenfelsgasse 19</street>
   <postCode>1010</postCode>
   <settlement>Wien</settlement>
   <country>Österreich</country>
  </address>
  <ref target="https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at">https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at</ref>
 </publisher>
 <publisher>
  <name>Ludwig Boltzmann Institut für Digital History</name>
  <address>
   <street>Hofburg, Batthianystiege</street>
   <postCode>1010</postCode>
   <settlement>Wien</settlement>
   <country>Österreich</country>
  </address>
  <ref target="https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at">https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at</ref>
 </publisher>
 <publisher>
  <name>Wienbibliothek im Rathaus</name>
  <address>
   <street>Friedrich-Schmidt-Platz 1</street>
   <postCode>1010</postCode>
   <country>Wien</country>
   <settlement>Österreich</settlement>
  </address>
  <ref target="https://www.wienbibliothek.at">https://www.wienbibliothek.at</ref>
 </publisher>
 <pubPlace>Wien, Österreich</pubPlace>
 <date>2021</date>
 <pubPlace>Wien, Österreich</pubPlace>
 <date>2021</date>
 <availability>
  <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0">Creative Commons Namensnennung 4.0 International Lizenz</licence>
 </availability>
 <idno type="URL" subtype="legalkraus">https://legalkraus.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/id/D_000125-006-000</idno>
 <idno type="URL" subtype="krausonline">http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/node/3371</idno>
 <idno type="ID" subtype="transkribus">251313</idno>
</publicationStmt>
```

3.3. Status des Dokuments, Arbeitsstand

Der Status der Bearbeitung des Dokuments wird in der <revisionDesc> im Attribut *status* notiert. Folgende Werte stehen hierfür zur Verfügung:

- draft
- done

Wird ein Dokument neu angelegt, ist es im Status 'draft'. Sind alle Arbeitsschritte abgeschlossen, wird der Status 'done' vergeben.

Die Arbeitsschritte umfassen:

- TEI-Header und Faksimile (header_facsimile)
- Textgliederung (structure)
- Referenzen (references)
- Typographisches (typography)

- Intertexte (intertexts)
- Korrekturen (corrections)

4. Metadaten des historischen Dokuments

Ebenfalls im <u><teiHeader></u> werden Metadaten zum historischen Dokument hinterlegt.

4.1. Quelle

Informationen zur Quelle finden sich im Element <u><sourceDesc></u>.

4.2. Textzeugen

Jedes digital vorliegende Dokument hat mindestens einen historischen Textzeugen. Das Element <u><listWit></u> listet die vorliegenden Textzeugen auf. Innerhalb von <u><listWit></u> wird jeder Textzeuge mit <u><witness></u> ausgezeichnet und mit einer *xml:id* versehen sowie mit dem entsprechenden *facs* verknüpft. Der Wert von *facs* hängt mit den in `<facsimilie>` angelegten Faksimiles zusammen.

4.3. Selektiver Apparat

...

4.4. Kontextinformationen

Im Element <u><profileDesc></u> lassen sich Kontextinformationen zum Dokument, etwa den beteiligten Personen, dem Entstehungsdatum, usw. hinterlegen.

4.4.1. Datierung

Zur Datierung (und als Grundlage für eine Sortierung) wird innerhalb von <u><creation></u> ein Datum im ISO-Format (JJJJ-MM-TT) im Attribut *when-iso* angegeben. Ist ein Dokument nicht eindeutig datierbar, so wird das Datum zusätzlich mit *notBefore-iso* und *notAfter-iso* eingeschränkt. Für die Sortierung wird das frühere Datum (aus *notBefore-iso*) in *when-iso* eingetragen. Für die Sortierung wird *sortDate* hinzugefügt. Wenn eine Datierung nicht möglich ist, ist weder *sortDate* noch ein ISO-Wert vorhanden. Zur weiteren Klassifizierung des Datums wird *subtype* eingeführt. Zur Auswahl stehen die Werte produced und received.

```
<creation>
 <date type="sortDate" subtype="received"
 when-iso="1922-11-30">30.11.1922</date>
</creation>
```

4.4.2. Sprache

In <u><langUsage></u> wird die Sprache des Dokuments festgehalten. In <u><language></u> wird dem Attribut *ident* ein Wert zugeordnet, z. B. ger für ein deutschsprachiges Dokument.

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="ger">Deutsch</language>
</langUsage>
```

4.4.3. Klassifizierung des Dokuments

<u><textClass></u>

Dokumenttypen werden in einer projektspezifischen Taxonomie definiert. Alle Dokumente werden mit dieser Taxonomie klassifiziert. Dazu wird die *URI* im Attriut *scheme* von <u><classCode></u> angebeben. Darüber hinaus gibt es <u><keywords></u>. Der darin enthaltene <u><term></u> bezieht sich erneut auf die Taxonomie.

```
<textClass>
 <keywords>
  <term>Brief</term>
 </keywords>
 <classCode scheme="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-doctypes/v1.0/">D.K.BRF</classCode>
</textClass>
```

Im obigen Beispiel klassifiziert https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-doctypes/v1.0/D.K.BRF das kodierte Dokument als Brief.

4.4.4. Beteiligte Personen und Institutionen

In der <u><particDesc></u> werden beteiligte Personen und Institutionen (im Unterschied zu rein namentlich genannten) in ihrer Rolle *role* verzeichnet.

(Für den Fall ergeben sich die Rollen aus den einzelnen Dokumenten.)

```
<particDesc>
```

```
<person role="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/plaintiff">
 <name>Karl Kraus</name>
</person>
<person role="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/defendant">
 <name>Karl Schiffleitner</name>
</person>
<org role="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/defendant">
 <name>Reichspost</name>
</org>
</particDesc>
```

Achtung: Die Werte in *role* sind noch vorläufig. Idealerweise werden diese aus einer noch zu erstellenden Taxonomie entnommen.

Denkbar (und sinnvoll) wäre es auch Personen und Institutionen mittels *ref* mit einem Normdatensatz (oder der PMB) zu verknüpfen.

4.4.5. Brief-Metadaten

<u><correspDesc></u>

Metadaten zu Korrespondenzstücken werden in <u><correspDesc></u> versammelt. Bei Dokumenten, die keine Korrespondenzstücke ausmachen, fehlt dieser Abschnitt. Es gibt drei Möglichkeiten für die Struktur der <u><correspDesc></u>: Erstens ist sowohl der/die AbsenderIn als auch der/die EmpfängerIn eine Person. Zweitens ist der/die AbsenderIn eine Person, der/die EmpfängerIn eine Institution. Drittens ist der/die AbsenderIn eine Institution, der/die EmpfängerIn eine Person. Entsprechend kommen die Elemente <persName> bzw. <orgName> zum Einsatz.

Der/Die AbsenderIn wird in <u><correspAction></u> mit dem Attribut *type* und dem Attributwert sent festgehalten. Der/Die EmpfängerIn hingegen ist in <u><correspAction></u> *type* received zu finden. Die Rollen der Personen und Institutionen, die sich aus der projektspezifischen Taxonomie ergeben, werden in <roleName> angegeben und mittels *ref* mit der entsprechenden Klassifikation in der Taxonomie verknüpft.

In <noteGrp> sind optional weitere Metadaten zur Korrespondenz enthalten. Mittels <u><note></u> und entsprechenden *type*-Attributen kann ein Betreff (subject), eine Diktatsigle (dictation) sowie ein Anhang (*appendix*) verzeichnet werden.

```
<correspDesc>
 <correspAction type="sent">
  <persName ref="#38624">Alfred Kraus</persName>
  <roleName ref=""/>
  <address>
   <rs type="place" ana="#address" ref=""/>
  </address>
  <placeName ref=""/>
  <date when-iso="1927-03-01">01.03.1927</date>
 </correspAction>
 <correspAction type="received">
  <persName ref="#38909">Herrn Dr. Oskar Samek</persName>
  <roleName ref=""/>
  <address>
   <rs type="place" ana="#address" ref=""/>
  </address>
  <placeName ref="#50">Wien</placeName>
  <date when-iso=""/>
 </correspAction>
 <noteGrp>
  <note type="subject"/>
  <note type="dictation"/>
  <note type="appendix"/>
 </noteGrp>
</correspDesc>
```

4.4.6. Schreiberhände

<u><handNotes></u>

Das Schreibmedium immer an eine Schreiberhand geknüpft. <u><handNote></u> mit *medium* (Bleistift,...) Kriterium für die Ansetzung einer Schreiberhand als <u><handNote></u> ist jedenfalls ein anderes Schreibmedium. Schreiberhände können, sofern sie Text beisteuern, identifiziert und per *scribeRef* mit dem Schreiber verknüpft werden (optional). Bei Anstreichungen ist dies in der Regel nicht möglich, dennoch sind bei materiell unterschiedlichen Anstreichungen auch die entsprechenden Hände anzulegen.

```
<handNotes>
 <handNote xml:id="D_000002-002-000-hand01"
  medium="pencil"/>
</handNotes>
```

5. Bilddaten

Die der digitalen Edition zugrundeliegenden Faksimiles sind in <u><facsimile></u> zu finden. Innerhalb von <u><facsimile></u> ist mindestens eine <u><surfaceGrp></u> enthalten. Diese beschreibt ein Blatt. Dieses Blatt wird in mehrere <u><surface></u>-El-

emente unterteilt. Diese machen die Seiten aus, die mittels *type* und recto bzw. verso näher bestimmt werden. Diese <u><surface></u>-Elemente beinhalten wiederum drei <u><graphic></u>-Elemente, die mittels *source* unterschieden werden. Die Faksimiles des Vorläuferprojekts "Karl Kraus Online" werden mit dem Attributwert krausonline versehen, jene der Wienbibliothek im Rathaus mit wienbibliothek und jene der projekteigenen Scans mit scans.

```
<facsimile xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001">
 <surfaceGrp xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001">
  <surface xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001-p001"
   type="recto">
   <graphic url="http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/sites/biographeme.com/files/images/object/00000019.jpg"
    source="krausonline"/>
   <graphic url="ZPH_1545-1/001_010/00000019.jpg"
    source="scans"/>
   <graphic url="https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at/wbrobv02/i3f/v21/2540028/full/full/0/default.jpg"
    source="wienbibliothek" ana="status:checked"/>
  </surface>
  <surface xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001-p002"
   type="recto">
   <graphic url="http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/sites/biographeme.com/files/images/object/00000021.jpg"
    source="krausonline"/>
   <graphic url="ZPH_1545-1/001_010/00000021.jpg"
    source="scans"/>
   <graphic url="https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at/wbrobv02/i3f/v21/2540030/full/full/0/default.jpg"
    source="wienbibliothek" ana="status:checked"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

6. Transkription des Dokuments

Die Transkription erfolgt im Element <u><body></u> des Elements <u><text></u>.

6.1. Editorische Einrichtungsfragen

Folgende Prinzipien wurden bei der Erstellung der Transkriptionen mit Transkribus berücksichtigt:

Spatien zwischen Abkürzungen, 'Z.A.' oder 'Z. A.', 'St.P.O.', 'P.A.', 'Urh.Ges.' etc., 'Art. IX' oder 'Art.IX', bei Datumsangaben, Komposita wie 'Kronos-Verlag' ('Kronos - Verlag') werden grundsätzlich nicht gesetzt.

Paginierungen im Typoskript werden nicht transkribiert.

Der Umgang mit Aktenzeichen, tabeller. Darstellung, muss mit einem Editionsbeispiel geklärt und auch mit dem Staatsarchiv geklärt werden, 35.13. 4. Seite - Check Formatierung Tabelle / Zeilen

Vorgefertigte Briefköpfe (Adressen etc.) werden erst einmal nicht zeilengetreu transkribiert bzw. nicht wiedergegeben; Durchsuchbarkeit durch Angabe im TEI-Header möglich

Interpunktion erfolgt zunächst streng nach Typoskript (selbst wenn dort eine Struktur erkennbar ist, die nicht konsequent eingehalten wird [etwa bei Aufzählungen etc.]) und wird nicht korrigiert, Bsp: 27.5, S. 4: Dr. Josef Szekely Wien, IX. Canisiusgasse 8 (Stunde)

Falsche Apostrophierung wird ebenfalls nicht korrigiert: Bsp. Ely's in Elys -> Tippfehler werden allerdings korrigiert, ebenso Anführungszeichen nach typographischen Regeln übernommen (öffnende und schließende sowie normale und einfache entsprechend angleichen), hingegen wird Grammatik/Rechtschreibung übernommen, aber Durchsuchbarkeit sollte stets gewährleistet bleiben

Bei Hochstellung von Zahlen und Buchstaben wird verzichtet: bspw. Hochstellung bei Dr wird immer mit Dr. wiedergeben, bei Uhrzeiten ebenfalls auf Hochstellung verzichten

Abkürzungen in hs. Protokollen werden aufgelöst: bspw. Zge -> Zeuge

Problem bei Korrektur der Rechtschreibung: nach zeitgenössischen Rechtschreibregeln -> wahrscheinlich brauchen wir einfach klare Regeln, wann man in Rechtschreibung u. Interpunktion eingreift, ansonsten greift man in Sprachgebrauch zu sehr ein oder man erstellt künstliche Texte, die es gar nicht gibt: Angenommenes Beispiel: Kraus beruft sich in einem Anschreiben auf fehlerhafte Schreibweise und gründet seine Thesen darauf, an der Stelle dürfte man natürlich nicht die fehlerhafte Schreibweise korrigieren, das Problem ist dann aber, dass wir dies konsequent tun, damit die Lesbarkeit bzw. Recherche nicht beeinträchtigt ist -> inkonsequente Vorgehensweise durch vernünftige Regeln möglichst vermeiden: sollte man bspw. den Rechtschreibfehler „dass" nicht korrigieren, da an der Stelle eigentlich ein Relativsatz gemeint ist und kein konsekutiver oder „einer strengerer Behandlung unterliegen würde" nicht in „einer strengeren Behandlung unterliegen würde"? Hier handelt es sich ja nicht um Tippfehler

Unterführungszeichen " werden aufgelöst, da wir Texte nicht standgenau wiedergeben

Bei Darstellung „Beschwerde ………………… S 4.–" werden Punkte ebenfalls weggelassen

Datumsangaben bei Durchschlägen wie bspw. 11. November 7 sollten nicht unvollständig, also mimetisch, wiedergegeben, sondern vollständig, 11. November 1927 (nach dem wahrscheinlich nicht mehr vorhandenen Original), angegeben werden; in Edition als Hinzufügung wiedergeben?

Wie werden Dokumente mit Tabellen dargestellt? Bsp: 31.15: nicht tabellarisch, siehe 134.71: wieviele tabell. Dok. gibt es? Wiedergabe überlegen

Bei Verwendung von J anstelle des I wird der Buchstabe entsprechend angeglichen, Bsp.: Jch in Ich, ein entsprechender Hinweis und erläuternder Kommentar sollte aber im Header erfolgen. Interessanterweise tritt diese Schreibweise v.a. bei Botho Laserstein auf, der offenbar für Schriftfragen sensibilisiert zu sein schien. So benutzte Laserstein u.a. eine Schreibmaschine, die keine Monospace, sondern Schwabacher Schrift verwendete, zudem setzte er in seinen Briefen Kustoden, die eigentlich primär für den Buchdruck vorgesehen waren. Diese wenigen Merkmale weisen darauf hin, dass Laserstein auf die Lesbarkeit seiner Briefe achtete. Unter Umständen ist so auch die eigentümliche J-Schreibung zu erklären: In der Monospace ähnelt das Versal-I dem Minuskel-L; durch die J-Schreibung, die in Handschriften noch durchaus üblich war, da in der Kurrentschrift das versale J und versale I kaum zu unterscheiden waren sowie bis in das 17./18. Jahrhundert die Buchstaben äquivalent verwendet wurden, konnte deutlich zwischen Versal-I und dem kleinen l differenziert werden.

Sehr geehrter Herr Kollege ! wird zu Sehr geehrter Herr Kollege! Abstand wird nicht übernommen.

Deckblätter bei Anträgen, Urteilen etc. werden stets ediert

falsche Schreibweise von Eigennamen bleibt erhalten, wenn es sich um keine Tippfehler handelt bzw. nur bei eindeutigen Tippfehlern wie Buchstabendrehern wird in den Text eingegriffen

Stempel werden in Transkribus mit eigener Textregion (tag mit element stamp) erfasst: d.h. sie werden nicht transkribiert bzw. wichtige Informationen wie Eingangsdatum im Header erfasst; Stempel werden aber ausgeschnitten, so dass jede Stempelart der Akten einsehbar ist. Arbeit könnte von den nächsten Praktikantinnen übernommen werden?

auch Beschreibungen wie Blatt 2 werden. nicht gesetzt, weil Paginierungen nicht ediert werden

Umgang mit zweispaltigen Satz? Bsp.: 70.3, besonders schwierig: 70.5 mit: news-eye können mehrere Spalten mit Text aufgezogen werden

Kustoden werden im Header kommentiert bzw. erläutert, nicht aber in der Transkription aufgenommen

Umgang mit zwei Fassungen einer Seite in einem Schriftsatz, Bsp.: 68.62, Seite 8 und Seite 9 (einmal mit handschriftlichen Korrekturen, einmal ohne) – funktioniert das hier mit Editionsrichtlinien Punkt 5 (Varianten aus Vorstufen mitgeteilt): an der betreffenden Stelle ist die Grundlage die späte Fassung; aufgenommen wird aber auch die frühe Fassung mit den Änderungen, die als Streichungen und Hinzufügungen dargestellt werden; schließlich wird es so für die betreffenden Zeilen zwei mögliche Versionen geben: den Entwurf als frühe Fassung und die Umsetzung des Entwurfs als späte Fassung; diese Lösung scheint besser als etwa die Darstellung der frühen Fassung in einem Variantenapparat, da so die Änderungen besser nachvollziehbar sind.

6.2. Textstruktur

Trennstriche usw. werden nicht kodiert, stattdessen werden, wenn möglich, Struktureinheiten angesetzt.

6.2.1. Seitenwechsel

Seitenwechsel werden mit <pb> markiert. Sie werden außerdem durch das Attribut *n* und dem entsprechenden Attributwert (z. B. 1 für die erste Seite) ausgezeichnet. Darüber hinaus werden sie mit den Bilddaten verknüpft.

6.2.2. Absätze

Die größte Struktureinheit nach der Seite (<pb>) ist der Absatz: <p>.

6.2.3. Zeilenfall

<lb>

6.2.4. Marginalien

Marginalien werden generell als <note> erfasst, ev. mit *place* o.ä. positioniert; sinnvoll wäre eine Klassifizierung mittels *type* von Marginalien, die auf eine Beilage verweisen; auf diese Weise lassen sich zumindest die Stellen im Dokument finden, in denen sich dann im Fließtext ein Verweis auf die Beilage findet

6.3. Typografische Hervorhebungen

Unterstreichung Sperrung Unterstreichung + Sperrung [Böhm: Kursive und Fette] Tag <u><hi></u> mit Attributen (vermutlich *rend* mit Werteliste) »Hervorhebung« vs. »Markierung« Medium immer an Hand (Attribut *hand*) geknüpft (im Header) <u><handNote></u> mit *medium* (Bleistift,...) Kriterium für die Ansetzung einer Schreiberhand im Header ist jedenfalls ein anderes Schreibmedium Schreiberhände bei Text identifizieren, nicht notwendigerweise bei Anstreichungen bei materiell unterschiedlichen Anstreichungen im Header auch zwei Hände anlegen Argument: Unterstreichungen immer semantisch relevant, daher werden sie im Gegensatz zu Sofortkorrekturen immer ausgezeichnet

6.4. Eingriffe in den Text

Sofort- und Spätkorrekturen

kodiert werden ausschließlich »semantisch relevante« Änderungen (siehe Einrichtung?): Beispiele finden sehr sparsam einsetzen... ex negativo definieren: keine orthographischen Änderungen, keine auf Interpunktion bezogene Änderungen, nicht, wenn Buchstaben nachgezogen werden (Lesbarkeit) bei semantisch relevanten Änderungen in unterschiedlichen Schreibschichten: Hinzufügung <u><add></u> , <u><del></u> … <u><subst></u> <u><gap></u> Textverlust <u><supplied></u> Zeilenfall in Hinzufügungen <u><add></u> werden nicht kodiert (kein <u><lb></u> in <u><add></u>) Frage ist, wie das Randanmerkungen betrifft (soll man in der Marginalie <u><add></u> verwenden oder @hand auf die <u><note></u> setzen = bevorzugte Variante) # <u><lb></u> Spätkorrekturen nur dann erfasst, wenn inhaltlich relevant sind. Bsp. für inhaltlich nicht relevante Spätkorrektur aus 2.3 (Anklageschrift): "solliim"

7. Annotation und semantische Erschließung

7.1. Klassifizierung der Abschnitte

Beipielsweise im Urteil *type*.

7.2. Verweise auf Entitäten

<u><rs></u> mit *type*.

Schachtelungen von <u><rs></u> sollen gemacht werden, Beispiel:

```
<rs type="person">Regisseur des <rs type="institution">Volkstheaters</rs>
</rs>
```

eher großzügiger taggen, als zu wenig

Personal- und Possessivpronomen nicht taggen; Kriterium sind Namen bzw. Substantive, die Rollen bezeichnen

7.2.1. Personen

erwähnte Personen im Unterschied zu 'beteiligten' Personen, vgl. X

historische Personen werden ausgezeichnet

type person

Aufnahme von am Dokument beteiligten Personen in der <u><particDesc></u> mit *role* im <u><teiHeader></u> des Dokuments (für den Fall ergeben sich die Rollen aus den einzelnen Dokumenten).

keine literarischen Figuren auszeichnen; gegebenenfalls als Werke (Bsp. "Hamlet", nicht Ophelia, Claudius, ….), aber Nero als historische Person soll getaggt werden; historische Personen in Zitaten werden getaggt

7.2.2. Institutionen

type institution

7.2.3. Orte

type place

7.2.4. Werke

type works

7.3. Gesetzestexte

<u><rs></u> *type* law

7.4. Zitate

<u><q></u> und <u><quote></u>

generell <u><q></u> für Text unter Anführungszeichen; <u><quote></u> für alles, was als Zitat identifiziert wurde; die Ausgabe kann man überlegen (Bsp. Doppelte und einfache Anführungszeichen). Anführungszeichen wurden bei der Transkription ohnehin schon normalisiert.

8. IDs

IDs, Identifier werden wie folgt vergeben...

9. TEI Modifikation

9.1. Elements

9.1.1. <TEI>

<td colspan="2"><TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <u><TEI></u> elements may be combined within a <u><TEI></u> (or <code><teiCorpus></code>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]</td>
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype)

version — specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status	Optional
Datatype	<u>teidata.version</u>
Note	Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *source* attribute on the associated `<schemaSpec>`.

Contained by	**textstructure:** <u>TEI</u>
May contain	**header:** <u>teiHeader</u> **textstructure:** <u>TEI</u> <u>text</u> **transcr:** <u>facsimile</u>
Note	This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0` on it, using the *xmlns* attribute.
Example	<pre><TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
<titleStmt>
<title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
<p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
version using a name space.</p>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
No source: this is an original work.
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<text>
<body>
This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.
</body>
</text>
</TEI></pre>
Example	<pre><TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"></pre>

```
  <teiHeader>
   <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
     <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
     <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
     <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
    </sourceDesc>
   </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <facsimile>
   <graphic url="page1.png"/>
   <graphic url="page2.png"/>
   <graphic url="page3.png"/>
   <graphic url="page4.png"/>
  </facsimile>
 </TEI>
```

Schematron	`<sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>`
Schematron	`<sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>`

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <sequence>
	  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
	  <alternate>
	   <sequence>
	    <classRef key="model.resource"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"
	     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   </sequence>
	   <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </alternate>
	 </sequence>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element TEI
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   attribute version { text }?,
	   (teiHeader, ((model.resource+, TEI*)
		TEI+))
		}</pre>

9.1.2. <add>

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.transcriptional</u> (@status, @cause, @seq) (<u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant)) (<u>att.written</u> (@hand)) <u>att.placement</u> (@place) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.dimensions</u> (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (<u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	<u>model.pPart.transcriptional</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>author</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>street</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> **header:** <u>change</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textstructure:** <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u>

	header: <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Note	In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <u><add></u> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the `<corr>` or <u><supplied></u> element are recommended. In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <u><add></u> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.
Example	```The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.```
Content model	```<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>```
Schema Declaration	```element add { att.global.attributes, att.transcriptional.attributes, att.placement.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.paraContent }```

9.1.3. *<address>*

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
Member of	<u>model.addressLike</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>author</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>rs</u> <u>street</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> **header:** <u>change</u> <u>classCode</u> <u>correspAction</u> <u>creation</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>language</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>witness</u> **textstructure:** <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> **transcr:** <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>gap</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>postCode</u> <u>rs</u> <u>street</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u>
Note	This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element `<addrLine>` may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the **model.addrPart** class, such as <u><street></u>, <u><postCode></u> etc.
Example	Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows: ```<address> <street>via Marsala 24</street> <postCode>40126</postCode> <name>Bologna</name> <name>Italy</name> </address>```

Example	When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <u><name></u>:
| | ```
<address>
 <street>via Marsala 24</street>
 <postCode>40126</postCode>
 <settlement>Bologna</settlement>
 <country>Italy</country>
</address>
``` |
| Example | ```
<address>
 <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
 <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
 <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
 <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
``` |
| Example | ```
<address>
 <country key="FR"/>
 <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
 <postCode>69002</postCode>
 <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
 <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
 <street>
  <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>
</address>
``` |
| Content model | ```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |
| Schema Declaration | ```
element address
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ )
}
``` |

9.1.4. <author>

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) (<u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref))
Member of	<u>model.respLike</u>
Contained by	**header:** <u>titleStmt</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data

Note	Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.
	   In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.
	   Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain de-

	tailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.
Example	``` <author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author> <author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634-1693)</author> <author>Anonymous</author> <author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author> <author> <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and <persName>John Fletcher</persName> </author> <author> <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network </author> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element author
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.naming.attributes,
	   macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

9.1.5. <availability>

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text. |	
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.enumerated
Legal values are:	**free** the text is freely available.
	un-known the status of the text is unknown.
	re-strict-ed the text is not freely available.	
Member of	model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**core:** p **header:** licence
Note	A consistent format should be adopted
Example	``` <availability status="restricted"> Available for academic research purposes only. </availability> <availability status="free"> In the public domain </availability> <availability status="restricted"> Available under licence from the publishers. </availability> ```
Example	``` <availability> <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT"> <p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p> <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p> <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy ```

```
                          of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal
                          in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights
                          to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell
                          copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
                          furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
                      <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in
                          all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
                      <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR
                          IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,
                          FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE
                          AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
                          LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,
                          OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN
                          THE SOFTWARE.</p>
                  </licence>
              </availability>
```

Content model	
	``<content>
<alternate minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>```

Schema Declaration	
	``element availability
{
att.global.attributes,
att.declarable.attributes,
attribute status { "free"	"unknown"	"restricted" }?,
(model.availabilityPart	model.pLike)+
}```

9.1.6. <body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls)
Contained by	textstructure: text
May contain	**core:** gap head lb note p pb q quote **figures:** table **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** dateline div opener
Example	```<body>
<l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
<l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
<l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
<l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
<l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
<l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
<l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
<l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
<l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
<trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>```
Content model	```<content>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">```

```
           <classRef key="model.global"/>
           <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
         </alternate>
       </sequence>
      <alternate>
       <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
        <alternate minOccurs="0"
         maxOccurs="unbounded">
         <classRef key="model.global"/>
         <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
       </sequence>
       <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
        <alternate minOccurs="0"
         maxOccurs="unbounded">
         <classRef key="model.global"/>
         <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
       </sequence>
       <sequence>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
         maxOccurs="unbounded">
         <classRef key="model.common"/>
         <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
        <alternate minOccurs="0">
         <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
          <alternate minOccurs="0"
           maxOccurs="unbounded">
           <classRef key="model.global"/>
           <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
         </sequence>
         <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
          <alternate minOccurs="0"
           maxOccurs="unbounded">
           <classRef key="model.global"/>
           <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
         </sequence>
        </alternate>
       </sequence>
      </alternate>
     <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element body
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
      ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
      (
         ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | (
            ( model.common, model.global* )+,
            (
               ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
             | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
``` |

9.1.7. <cell>

<cell> contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module	figures
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.tableDecoration</u> (@role, @rows, @cols)
Contained by	**figures:** <u>row</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Example	<pre><row>
 <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
 <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
   and inattention to duties</cell>
</row></pre>
Content model	<pre><content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element cell
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.tableDecoration.attributes,
   macro.specialPara
}</pre>

9.1.8. *<change>*

<change> documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.6. Identifying Changes and Revisions]	

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.ascribed</u> (@who) <u>att.datable</u> (@calendar, @period) (<u>att.datable.w3c</u> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<u>att.datable.iso</u> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<u>att.datable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) <u>att.docStatus</u> (@status) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype)
	target points to one or more elements that belong to this change.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace
Contained by	**header:** <u>revisionDesc</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data

Note	The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <u>respStmt</u> or <u>person</u> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.
	It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

Example	
| | ```
<titleStmt>
 <title> ... </title>
 <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
 <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
  <resp>copy editing</resp>
  <name>Brett Zamir</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02"
  status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02"
  status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
 <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
  who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
``` |

Example	
| | ```
<profileDesc>
 <creation>
  <listChange>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT2"
    notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly
       using green ink</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT3"
    notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as
       supplied to printer.</change>
  </listChange>
 </creation>
</profileDesc>
``` |

Content model	
| | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
``` |

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element change
{
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute target { list { + } }?,
   macro.specialPara
}
``` |

9.1.9. <classCode>

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
	scheme identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a `<taxonomy>` element, or some other resource.
	Status Required
	Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
Contained by	**header:** <u>textClass</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>gap</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u>
	header: <u>idno</u>
	namesdates: <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u>
	transcr: <u>subst</u>

	character data
Example	`<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>`

Content model	```<content>```
	``` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>```
	```</content>```

Schema Declaration	```element classCode```
	```{```
	``` att.global.attributes,```
	``` attribute scheme { text },```
	``` macro.phraseSeq.limited```
	```}```

9.1.10. <correspAction>

<correspAction> (correspondence action) contains a structured description of the place, the name of a person/organization and the date related to the sending/receiving of a message or any other action related to the correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.ren-dition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.glob-al.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey) <u>att.typed</u> (type, @subtype)

<table>
<tr><td>type</td><td colspan="2">describes the nature of the action.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Derived from**</td><td><u>att.typed</u></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td><u>teidata.enumerated</u></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Suggested values in-clude:**</td><td>**sent**
    information concerning the sending or dispatch of a message.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**re-ceived** information concerning the receipt of a message.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**trans-mit-ted** information concerning the transmission of a message, i.e. between the dispatch and the next receipt, redirect or forwarding.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**redi-rect-ed** information concerning the redirection of an un-read message.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**for-ward-ed** information concerning the forwarding of a mes-sage.</td></tr>
</table>

Member of	<u>model.correspDescPart</u>
Contained by	**header:** <u>correspDesc</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>rs</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u>

Example	```<correspAction type="sent">```
	``` <persName>Adelbert von Chamisso</persName>```
	``` <settlement>Vertus</settlement>```
	``` <date when="1807-01-29"/>```
	```</correspAction>```

Content model	```<content>```
	``` <alternate>```
	``` <classRef key="model.correspActionPart"```

```
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration	```
	element correspAction
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	   att.sortable.attributes,
	   attribute type
	   {
	      "sent"
		"received"	"transmitted"	"redirected"	"forwarded"
					   }?,
					   (model.correspActionPart+ | model.pLike+)
					}
					``

9.1.11. <correspDesc>

**<correspDesc>** (correspondence description) contains a description of the actions related to one act of correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** note p **header:** correspAction

Example	```
	<correspDesc>
	 <correspAction type="sent">
	  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
	  <settlement>Dresden</settlement>
	  <date when="1817-06-23">23 June 1817</date>
	 </correspAction>
	 <correspAction type="received">
	  <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>
	  <settlement>Prag</settlement>
	 </correspAction>
	 <correspContext>
	  <ref type="prev"
	   target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041209">Previous letter of
	  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
	     to <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
	  <date from="1817-06-19" to="1817-06-20">June 19/20, 1817</date>
	  </ref>
	  <ref type="next"
	   target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041217">Next letter of
	  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
	  <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
	  <date when="1817-06-27">June 27, 1817</date>
	  </ref>
	 </correspContext>
	</correspDesc>
	``

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <alternate>
	  <classRef key="model.correspDescPart"
	   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </alternate>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element correspDesc
	{
	   att.declarable.attributes,
	   att.canonical.attributes,
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   (model.correspDescPart+ | model.pLike+)
	``

```
        }
```

9.1.12. <country>

<country> contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **namesdates:** country org settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
Example	`<country key="DK">Denmark</country>`
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element country
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.naming.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   att.datable.attributes,
	   macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

9.1.13. <creation>

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.profileDescPart

Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** address date hi name q ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst character data
Note	The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

Example	`<creation>`
	 `<date>Before 1987</date>`
	`</creation>`

Example	`<creation>`
	 `<date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>`
	`</creation>`

Content model	`<content>`
	 `<alternate minOccurs="0"`
	  `maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	  `<textNode/>`
	  `<classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>`
	  `<elementRef key="listChange"/>`
	 `</alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element creation`
	`{`
	   `att.global.attributes,`
	   `att.datable.attributes,`
	   `( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange )*`
	`}`

9.1.14. *<date>*

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**core:** add author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence publicationStmt **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q ref rs term title

	header: <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Example	`<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>`

Example	`Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day`
	`of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic`
	`the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>`

Example	`<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <textNode/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.global"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element date`
	`{`
	`   att.global.attributes,`
	`   att.canonical.attributes,`
	`   att.datable.attributes,`
	`   att.editLike.attributes,`
	`   att.dimensions.attributes,`
	`   att.typed.attributes,`
	`   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*`
	`}`

9.1.15. <dateline>

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
Member of	<u>model.divWrapper</u>
Contained by	**figures:** <u>table</u> **textstructure:** <u>body</u> <u>div</u> <u>opener</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Example	`<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>`

Example	`<div type="chapter">`
	` <p>`
	`<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>`
	` <closer>`
	`  <dateline>`
	`   <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>`
	`   <date>1914-1921</date>`
	`  </dateline>`
	` </closer>`
	`</div>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <textNode/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.global"/>`

```
      <elementRef key="docDate"/>
    </alternate>
  </content>
```

Schema Declaration	<pre>element dateline
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   (text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate)*
	}</pre>

9.1.16. <del>

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.transcriptional</u> (@status, @cause, @seq) (<u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant)) (<u>att.written</u> (@hand)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.dimensions</u> (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (<u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>author</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> p <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>street</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> **header:** <u>change</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textstructure:** <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data

Note	This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.
	   The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <u><supplied></u> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <u><gap></u> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <u><gap></u> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.
	   Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).
	   There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <u><del></u> and `<surplus>` on the one hand and <u><gap></u> or `<unclear>` on the other. <u><del></u> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <u><gap></u> or `<unclear>`, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example	<pre><l>
	  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del></pre>

| | ```
    weht der Wind
  </l>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<del rend="overstrike">
 <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
  unit="character"/>
</del>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element del
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   macro.paraContent
}
``` |

9.1.17. *<div>*

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren- dition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.glob- al.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divLike
Contained by	**textstructure:** body div
May contain	**core:** gap head lb note p pb q quote **figures:** table **textcrit:** listWit **textstructure:** dateline div opener
| **Example** | ```
<body>
 <div type="part">
  <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all
    exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
   <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
   <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest
       happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
   <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to
        authority [...] </p>
   </div>
   <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </p>
   </div>
  </div>
 </div>
</body>
``` |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-lev- el structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Ab- stract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
``` |

```
              <alternate>
               <sequence minOccurs="1"
                maxOccurs="unbounded">
                <alternate>
                 <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
                 <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
                </alternate>
                <classRef key="model.global"
                 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
               </sequence>
               <sequence>
                <sequence minOccurs="1"
                 maxOccurs="unbounded">
                 <classRef key="model.common"/>
                 <classRef key="model.global"
                  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                </sequence>
                <sequence minOccurs="0"
                 maxOccurs="unbounded">
                 <alternate>
                  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
                  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
                 </alternate>
                 <classRef key="model.global"
                  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                </sequence>
               </sequence>
              </alternate>
              <sequence minOccurs="0"
               maxOccurs="unbounded">
               <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
               <classRef key="model.global"
                minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
              </sequence>
             </sequence>
            </sequence>
           </content>
```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element div
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.divLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
         | (
            ( model.common, model.global* )+,
            ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
         )
         ),
         ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
``` |

9.1.18. <editor>

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]	

Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	**header:** titleStmt
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied

	character data
Note	A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.
Example	```<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>``` ```<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>``` ```<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor>```

Content model	```<content>```
	``` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>```
	```</content>```

Schema Declaration	```element editor```
	```{```
	``` att.global.attributes,```
	``` att.naming.attributes,```
	``` macro.phraseSeq```
	```}```

9.1.19. <facsimile>

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls)
Member of	model.resource
Contained by	textstructure: TEI
May contain	core: graphic transcr: surface surfaceGrp

Example	```<facsimile>```
	``` <graphic url="page1.png"/>```
	``` <surface>```
	``` <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>```
	``` <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>```
	``` </surface>```
	``` <graphic url="page3.png"/>```
	``` <graphic url="page4.png"/>```
	```</facsimile>```

Example	```<facsimile>```
	``` <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">```
	``` <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>```
	``` </surface>```
	```</facsimile>```

Content model	```<content>```
	``` <sequence>```
	``` <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/>```
	``` <alternate minOccurs="1"```
	``` maxOccurs="unbounded">```
	``` <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>```
	``` <elementRef key="surface"/>```
	``` <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>```
	``` </alternate>```
	``` <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/>```
	``` </sequence>```
	```</content>```

Schema Declaration	```element facsimile```
	```{```
	``` att.global.attributes,```
	``` att.declaring.attributes,```
	``` (front?, (model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp)+, back?)```
	```}```

9.1.20. *<fileDesc>*

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**header:** publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt
Note	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

Example	```xml
	<fileDesc>
	 <titleStmt>
	  <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
	 </titleStmt>
	 <publicationStmt>
	   Distributed as part of TEI P5
	 </publicationStmt>
	 <sourceDesc>
	   No print source exists: this is an original digital text
	 </sourceDesc>
	</fileDesc>
	``

Content model	```xml
	<content>
	 <sequence>
	  <sequence>
	   <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
	   <elementRef key="editionStmt"
	    minOccurs="0"/>
	   <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
	   <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
	   <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   <elementRef key="notesStmt"
	    minOccurs="0"/>
	  </sequence>
	  <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
	   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </sequence>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element fileDesc
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   (
	      (
	         titleStmt,
	         editionStmt?,
	         extent?,
	         publicationStmt,
	         seriesStmt*,
	         notesStmt?
	      ),
	      sourceDesc+
	   )
	}
	``

9.1.21. *<gap>*

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs,

@copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

reason		gives the reason for omission	
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace	
	Suggested values include:	cancelled	
		deleted	
		editorial	for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy
		illegible	
		inaudible	
		irrelevant	
		sampling	
agent		in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.	
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated	
	Sample values include:	rubbing	damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
		mildew	damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
		smoke	damage results from smoke

Member of	model.global.edit
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell table **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **namesdates:** country person settlement **textstructure:** body dateline div opener text **transcr:** supplied surface surfaceGrp
May contain	Empty element
Note	The \<gap\>, \<unclear\>, and \<del\> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the \<damage\> and \<supplied\> elements, available when using the additional tagset for tran-

	scription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The <u>\<gap></u> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <u>\<del></u> in the case of deliberate deletion.
Example	``` <gap quantity="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/> ```
Example	``` <gap quantity="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"/> ```
Example	``` <del> <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/> </del> ```
Example	``` <gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/> ```
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.descLike"/> <classRef key="model.certLike"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element gap
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.timed.attributes,
	   att.editLike.attributes,
	   att.dimensions.attributes,
	   attribute reason
	   {
	      list
	      {
	         (
	            "cancelled"
	          | "deleted"
	          | "editorial"
	          | "illegible"
	          | "inaudible"
	          | "irrelevant"
	          | "sampling"
	         )+
	      }
	   }?,
	   attribute agent { text }?,
	   (model.descLike | model.certLike)*
	}
	``

9.1.22. \<graphic>

	\<graphic> indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.media</u> (@width, @height, @scale) (<u>att.internetMedia</u> (@mimeType)) <u>att.resourced</u> (@url) <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls)
Member of	<u>model.graphicLike</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>author</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>street</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> <u>table</u> **header:** <u>change</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textstructure:** <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> **transcr:** <u>facsimile</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>surface</u>
May contain	Empty element

Note	The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute. Within the body of a text, a <u>\<graphic\></u> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <u>\<facsimile\></u> or \<sourceDoc\> element, however, a <u>\<graphic\></u> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.
Example	``` <figure> <graphic url="fig1.png"/> <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head> <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc> </figure> ```
Example	``` <facsimile> <surfaceGrp n="leaf1"> <surface> <graphic url="page1.png"/> </surface> <surface> <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/> <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/> </surface> </surfaceGrp> </facsimile> ```
Content model	``` <content> <classRef key="model.descLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element graphic
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.media.attributes,
	   att.resourced.attributes,
	   att.declaring.attributes,
	   model.descLike*
	}
	``

9.1.23. *\<handNote\>*

\<handNote\> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.handFeatures</u> (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)
Contained by	transcr: <u>handNotes</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data

Example	```
	<handNote scope="sole">
	  Written in insular
	   phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed
	   minuscule.
	</handNote>
	``

Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element handNote
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	``

```
                                    att.handFeatures.attributes,
                                    macro.specialPara
                              }
```

9.1.24. <handNotes>

<handNotes> contains one or more <u>handNote</u> elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
Member of	<u>model.profileDescPart</u>
Contained by	**header:** <u>profileDesc</u>
May contain	**header:** <u>handNote</u>

Example	```
	<handNotes>
	 <handNote xml:id="H1" script="copperplate"
	  medium="brown-ink">Carefully written with regular descenders</handNote>
	 <handNote xml:id="H2" script="print"
	  medium="pencil">Unschooled scrawl</handNote>
	</handNotes>
	``

Content model	``` <content> <elementRef key="handNote" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content> ```
Schema Declaration	``` element handNotes { att.global.attributes, handNote+ } ```

9.1.25. <head>

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.placement</u> (@place) <u>att.written</u> (@hand)
Member of	<u>model.headLike</u>
Contained by	**figures:** <u>table</u> **namesdates:** <u>org</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **textstructure:** <u>body</u> <u>div</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Note	The <u>head</u> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <u>head</u> element based on its structural position. A <u>head</u> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

Example	The most common use for the <u><head></u> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a `<trailer>`, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
 <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of
   Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
 <div2 type="section">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
  <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
  <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve
    years passed.</p>
  <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six
    years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
 </div2>
</div1>
```

Example	When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the *place* attribute.

```
<div type="subsection">
 <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
 <p>
  <lb n="1251"/>
  <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis<supplied>.</supplied>
  </hi>
  <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium
   [...]
 </p>
</div>
```

Example	The <u><head></u> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
 useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <list rend="bulleted">
 <head>Connectives</head>
 <item>above</item>
 <item>accordingly</item>
 <item>across from</item>
 <item>adjacent to</item>
 <item>again</item>
 <item>
<!-- ... -->
 </item>
</list>
```

Content model	

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration	

```
element head
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | lg
    | model.gLike
    | model.phrase
    | model.inter
    | model.lLike
    | model.global
   )*
}
```

9.1.26. <hi>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.hiLike
Contained by	**core:** add author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Example	```<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...```
Content model	```<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>```
Schema Declaration	```element hi { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent }```

9.1.27. *<idno>*

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

type	categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.
Derived from	att.typed
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.enumerated
Suggested values include:	**ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a pub-

lished book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

ISSN

International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.

DOI

Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.

URI

Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath.

VIAF

A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.

ESTC

English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.

OCLC

OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.

Member of	model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote idno language licence publicationStmt **namesdates:** country org person settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**header:** idno character data
Note	<idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.
Example	``` <idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno> <idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno> <idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno> <idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno> <idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno> <idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno> <idno type="Wing">C695</idno> <idno type="oldCat"> <g ref="#sym"/>345 </idno> ``` In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as #sym.
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> ```

```
      <textNode/>
      <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
      <elementRef key="idno"/>
     </alternate>
    </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element idno
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
   }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
``` |

9.1.28. <keywords>

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
	scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.pointer
Contained by	**header:** textClass
May contain	**core:** term
Note	Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute.
| **Example** | ```
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
 <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
 <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<keywords>
 <term>Fermented beverages</term>
 <term>Central Andes</term>
 <term>Schinus molle</term>
 <term>Molle beer</term>
 <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
 <term>Ethnography</term>
 <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="list"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element keywords
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   ( term+ | list )
}
``` |

9.1.29. *<langUsage>*

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	header: profileDesc
May contain	core: p header: language

Example	<pre><langUsage>
	 <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
	 <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
	 <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
	</langUsage></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <alternate>
	  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </alternate>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element langUsage
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.declarable.attributes,
	   (model.pLike+ | language+)
	}</pre>

9.1.30. *<language>*

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]		
Module	header	
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))	
	ident	(identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute.
		Status Required
		Datatype teidata.language
	usage	specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.
		Status Optional
		Datatype nonNegativeInteger
Contained by	header: langUsage	
May contain	core: address date gap hi lb name note pb q ref rs term title header: idno namesdates: country settlement transcr: subst	

	character data
Note	Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.
Example	```<langUsage>
<language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
<language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>
<language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>```
Content model	```<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>```
Schema Declaration	```element language
{
att.global.attributes,
attribute ident { text },
attribute usage { text }?,
macro.phraseSeq.limited
}```

9.1.31. <lb>

**<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell table **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **namesdates:** country org person settlement **textstructure:** body dateline div opener text **transcr:** subst supplied surface surfaceGrp
May contain	Empty element
Note	By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the `<l>` element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.
Example	This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions: ```<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>```
Example	This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word. ```<titlePart>
<lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>```
Content model	```<content>```

```
            <empty/>
          </content>
```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element lb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
``` |

9.1.32. *<licence>*

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.pointing</u> (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) <u>att.datable</u> (@calendar, @period) (<u>att.datable.w3c</u> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<u>att.datable.iso</u> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<u>att.datable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	<u>model.availabilityPart</u>
Contained by	**header:** <u>availability</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Note	A <u><licence></u> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
| **Example** | ```
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence  Creative Commons At
</licence>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<availability>
 <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
  notBefore="2013-01-01">
  <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
     applies to this document.</p>
  <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
 </licence>
</availability>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element licence
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   macro.specialPara
}
``` |

9.1.33. *<listWit>*

<listWit> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	

Module	textcrit
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	**core:** add del head hi note p q quote ref title **figures:** cell **header:** change handNote licence sourceDesc **textcrit:** listWit witness **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** head **textcrit:** listWit witness

Note	May contain a series of <witness> or <listWit> elements.
	   The provision of a <listWit> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus.
	   Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single <listWit> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the `<witStart>` and `<witEnd>` elements described in section 12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses.
	   Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single <listWit> element.

Example	```
	<listWit>
	 <witness xml:id="HL26">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
	 <witness xml:id="PN392">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
	  Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
	 <witness xml:id="RP149">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
	  (see further <ptr target="#MSRP149"/>)</witness>
	</listWit>
	``

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <sequence>
	  <classRef key="model.headLike"
	   minOccurs="0"/>
	  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <elementRef key="witness"/>
	   <elementRef key="listWit"/>
	  </alternate>
	 </sequence>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element listWit
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.sortable.attributes,
	   (model.headLike?, desc*, (witness | listWit)+)
	}
	``

9.1.34. <name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1. Referring Strings]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @no-

	tAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.edit-Like (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike.agent model.personPart
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp respStmt rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **namesdates:** country org person settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, or `<orgName>`, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

Example	`<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>`
	`<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>`
	`<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>`
	`<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>`

Content model	`<content>`
	 `<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element name`
	`{`
	   `att.global.attributes,`
	   `att.personal.attributes,`
	   `att.datable.attributes,`
	   `att.editLike.attributes,`
	   `att.typed.attributes,`
	   `macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.35. *<note>*

`<note>` contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)

anchored	indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.		
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.truthValue	
	Default	true	
	Note	In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicat-	

		ed in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.
targetEnd		points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	Note	This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. range().

Member of	model.correspActionPart model.correspDescPart model.noteLike
Contained by	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>author</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>rs</u> <u>street</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> <u>table</u> **header:** <u>change</u> <u>classCode</u> <u>correspAction</u> <u>correspDesc</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>language</u> <u>licence</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>witness</u> **textstructure:** <u>body</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>div</u> <u>opener</u> <u>text</u> **transcr:** <u>supplied</u> <u>surface</u> <u>surfaceGrp</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Example	In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly": ```\nAnd yet it is not only\n in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the\n painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss"\nresp="#MDMH">\n<term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two\ndistinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,\nthe other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid\nconfusion, they have been distinguished in English as\n<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and\n<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.\n</note> style of the\n Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this\n psychological significance.\n\n<!-- elsewhere in the document -->\n<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">\n <resp>translation from German to English</resp>\n <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>\n</respStmt>\n``` For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.
Example	The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example: ```\nMevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the\n family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The\n alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to\n Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents\n published by Jacob Mann.\n```

	However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed auto-matically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element note
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.placement.attributes,
	   att.pointing.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   att.written.attributes,
	   attribute anchored { text }?,
	   attribute targetEnd { list { + } }?,
	   macro.specialPara
	}
	``

9.1.36. <opener>

	<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divTopPart
Contained by	**textstructure:** body div
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textstructure:** dateline **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Example	``` <opener> <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline> </opener> ```
Example	``` <opener> <dateline> <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name> <date>November 11, 1848</date> </dateline> <salute>My dear Sir,</salute> </opener> I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring... ```
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <elementRef key="argument"/> <elementRef key="byline"/> <elementRef key="dateline"/> <elementRef key="epigraph"/> <elementRef key="salute"/> <elementRef key="signed"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element opener
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.written.attributes,
	``

```
    (
      text
    | model.gLike
    | model.phrase
    | argument
    | byline
    | dateline
    | epigraph
    | salute
    | signed
    | model.global
    )*
}
```

9.1.37. <org>

<org> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [13.3.3. Organizational Data]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype) <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant) <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey)

role		specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace
	Note	Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, familyGroup, or politicalParty, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <desc> for each <valItem> element in the schema specification of the project's customization.

Member of	<u>model.personLike</u>
Contained by	**corpus:** <u>particDesc</u> **namesdates:** <u>org</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>head</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>rs</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>settlement</u>

Example	<pre><org xml:id="JAMs">
	 <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName>
	 <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by
	 <persName>Hagbard Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati
	   from a golden submarine, the <name>Leif Ericson</name>
	 </desc>
	 <bibl>
	  <author>Robert Shea</author>
	  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author>
	  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title>
	 </bibl>
	</org></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <sequence>
	  <classRef key="model.headLike"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <alternate>
	   <classRef key="model.pLike"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   <alternate minOccurs="0"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded">
	    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
	    <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>
	    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
	    <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>
	    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
	   </alternate>
	  </alternate></pre>

```
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
  <elementRef key="link"/>
  <elementRef key="ptr"/>
 </alternate>
 <classRef key="model.personLike"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element org
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute role { list { + } }?,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      (
         model.pLike*
       | (
            model.labelLike
          | model.nameLike
          | model.placeLike
          | model.orgPart
          | model.milestoneLike
         )*
      ),
      ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | linkGrp | link | ptr )*,
      model.personLike*
   )
}
``` |

9.1.38. <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.pLike
Contained by	**core:** note q quote **corpus:** particDesc **figures:** cell **header:** availability change correspAction correspDesc handNote langUsage licence publicationStmt sourceDesc **namesdates:** org person **textstructure:** body div
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst supplied character data
| **Example** | ```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you
   done?</q>
</p>
<p>
 <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
 <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
 <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q>
</p>
``` |

Schematron	`<s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)">` Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. `</s:report>`
Schematron	`<s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]">` Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. `</s:report>`
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element p
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.declaring.attributes,
	   att.fragmentable.attributes,
	   att.written.attributes,
	   macro.paraContent
	}
	``

9.1.39. <particDesc>

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]	
Module	corpus
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** p **namesdates:** org person
Note	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

Example	```
	<particDesc>
	 <listPerson>
	  <person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid">
	    Female informant, well-educated, born in
	       Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently.
	       Socio-Economic status B2.
	  </person>
	  <person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1">
	   <persName>
	    <surname>Hancock</surname>
	    <forename>Antony</forename>
	    <forename>Aloysius</forename>
	    <forename>St John</forename>
	   </persName>
	   <residence notAfter="1959">
	    <address>
	     <street>Railway Cuttings</street>
	     <settlement>East Cheam</settlement>
	    </address>
	   </residence>
	   <occupation>comedian</occupation>
	  </person>
	  <listRelation>
	   <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
	    mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/>
	  </listRelation>
	 </listPerson>
	</particDesc>
	``
	
	This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.

Content model	``` <content> ```

```
        <alternate>
         <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
         <alternate minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
          <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
          <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
         </alternate>
        </alternate>
       </content>
```

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element particDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}
``` |

9.1.40. <pb>

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell table **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **namesdates:** country org person settlement **textstructure:** body dateline div opener text **transcr:** subst supplied surface surfaceGrp
May contain	Empty element
Note	A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.
Example	Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text. ``` ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>` `<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>` `<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... ```
Example	A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute ```<body>` ` <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>` `<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;` ` the text it contains is encoded here -->` ` ` `<!-- ... -->` ` ` ` <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>` `<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->` ` ` `<!-- ... -->` ` ` `</body>```
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <empty/>
</content>
``` |

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element pb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
``` |

9.1.41. <person>

<person> provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="4"></td><td>role</td><td colspan="2">specifies a primary role or classification for the person.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Note**</td><td>Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>sex</td><td colspan="2">specifies the sex of the person.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>1–# occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Note**</td><td>Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>age</td><td colspan="2">specifies an age group for the person.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>teidata.enumerated</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Note**</td><td>Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.</td></tr>
</table>

Member of	model.personLike
Contained by	**corpus:** particDesc **namesdates:** org
May contain	**core:** gap lb name note p pb **header:** idno

Note	May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class.
Example	```<person sex="F" age="adult">` ` Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French` ` status B2. ` `</person>```
Example	```<person sex="intersex" role="god"` ` age="immortal">` ` <persName>Hermaphroditos</persName>` ` <persName xml:lang="grc">##µ#########</persName>` `</person>```
Example	```<person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet">` ` <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>` ` <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>` ` <birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName>` ` <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>` ` <country key="IT">Italy</country>` ` </placeName>` ` </birth>` ` <death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName>` ` <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>` ` <country key="RO">Romania</country>` ` </placeName>` ` </death>` `</person>```
Content model	```<content>` ` <alternate>` ` <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"` ` maxOccurs="unbounded"/>` ` <alternate minOccurs="0"` ` maxOccurs="unbounded">` ` <classRef key="model.personPart"/>` ` <classRef key="model.global"/>` ` <elementRef key="ptr"/>` ` </alternate>` ` </alternate>` `</content>```
Schema Declaration	```element person` `{` ` att.global.attributes,` ` att.editLike.attributes,` ` att.sortable.attributes,` ` attribute role { list { + } }?,` ` attribute sex { list { + } }?,` ` attribute age { text }?,` ` (model.pLike+	(model.personPart | model.global | ptr)*)` `}```

9.1.42. <postCode>

<postCode> (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.5.2. Addresses]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
Member of	<u>model.addrPart</u>
Contained by	**core:** <u>address</u>
May contain	Character data only
Note	The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.
Example	```<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>```
Example	```<postCode>60142-7</postCode>```
Content model	```<content>` ` <textNode/>` `</content>```

Schema Declaration	`element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }`

9.1.43. <profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.teiHeaderPart
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**corpus:** particDesc **header:** correspDesc creation langUsage textClass **transcr:** handNotes
Note	Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.

Example	```xml
	<profileDesc>
	 <langUsage>
	  <language ident="fr">French</language>
	 </langUsage>
	 <textDesc n="novel">
	  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
	  <constitution type="single"/>
	  <derivation type="original"/>
	  <domain type="art"/>
	  <factuality type="fiction"/>
	  <interaction type="none"/>
	  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
	  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
	  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
	 </textDesc>
	 <settingDesc>
	  <setting>
	   <name>Paris, France</name>
	   <time>Late 19th century</time>
	  </setting>
	 </settingDesc>
	</profileDesc>
	``

Content model	```xml
	<content>
	 <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"
	  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	`element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* }`

9.1.44. <pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Member of	model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title

	header: idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Example	``` <publicationStmt> <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <date>1989</date> </publicationStmt> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element pubPlace
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.naming.attributes,
	   macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

9.1.45. <publicationStmt>

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** address date p pubPlace publisher ref **header:** availability idno
Note	Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.
Example	``` <publicationStmt> <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher> <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace> <date when="1846"/> </publicationStmt> ```
Example	``` <publicationStmt> <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher> <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace> <availability> Available under licence only </availability> <date when="1992">1992</date> </publicationStmt> ```
Example	``` <publicationStmt> <publisher>Zea Books</publisher> <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace> <date>2017</date> <availability> This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license. </availability> <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </publicationStmt> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <alternate>
	  <sequence minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>
	   <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	``

```
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
 </content>
```

| Schema Declaration | ```
element publicationStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency, model.publicationStmtPart.detail* )+
    | model.pLike+
   )
}
``` |
|---|---|

9.1.46. <publisher>

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.publicationStmtPart.agency
Contained by	**header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
| **Example** | ```
<imprint>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
 <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element publisher
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq
}
``` |

9.1.47. <q>

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]		
Module	core	
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who))	
	type	may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.
		Status Optional

Datatype		teidata.enumerated
Suggested values include:	**spoken**	representation of speech
	thought	representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue
	written	quotation from a written source
	soCalled	authorial distance
	foreign	
	distinct	linguistically distinct
	term	technical term
	emph	rhetorically emphasized
	mentioned	refering to itself, not its normal referent

Member of	model.common model.hiLike
Contained by	**core:** add author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body dateline div opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note p pb q quote ref rs term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.
Example	```It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>```
Content model	```<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>```
Schema Declaration	```element q { att.global.attributes, att.ascribed.directed.attributes, attribute type { "spoken"	"thought"	"written"	"soCalled"	"foreign"```

```
             | "distinct"
             | "term"
             | "emph"
             | "mentioned"
        }?,
        macro.specialPara
    }
```

9.1.48. <quote>

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.quoteLike
Contained by	**core:** add author del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change handNote licence **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note p pb q quote ref rs term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.
Example	```Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the``` ``` work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his``` ``` slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it``` ``` keeps</quote>``` ```<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>```
Content model	```<content>``` ``` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>``` ```</content>```
Schema Declaration	```element quote``` ```{``` ``` att.global.attributes,``` ``` att.typed.attributes,``` ``` att.notated.attributes,``` ``` macro.specialPara``` ```}```

9.1.49. <ref>

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

	(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.ptrLike
Contained by	**core:** add author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence publicationStmt **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.
| **Example** | ```
See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second
  sentence</ref>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.
``` |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report> |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element ref
{
   att.cReferencing.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.global.attributes,
   att.internetMedia.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent
}
``` |

9.1.50. <resp>

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Contained by	**core:** respStmt
May contain	**core:** address date gap hi lb name note pb q ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement

	transcr: subst character data
Note	The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class **att.canonical** may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage.
Example	``` <respStmt> <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp> <name>Edward Child</name> </respStmt> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element resp
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.canonical.attributes,
	   att.datable.attributes,
	   macro.phraseSeq.limited
	}
	``

9.1.51. <respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	**header:** titleStmt
May contain	**core:** name note resp
Example	``` <respStmt> <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp> <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName> </respStmt> ```
Example	``` <respStmt> <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp> <name>Alan Morrison</name> </respStmt> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <sequence>
	  <alternate>
	   <sequence>
	    <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
	     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   </sequence>
	   <sequence>
	    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
	     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	    <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
	     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   </sequence>
	  </alternate>
	  <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </sequence>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	``` element respStmt ```

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  (
    ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) ),
    note*
  )
}
```

9.1.52. *<revisionDesc>*

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status)
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**header:** change
Note	If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example	`<revisionDesc status="embargoed">`
	` <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>`
	`</revisionDesc>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate>`
	`  <elementRef key="list"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="listChange"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"`
	`   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element revisionDesc`
	`{`
	`   att.global.attributes,`
	`   att.docStatus.attributes,`
	`   ( list | listChange | change+ )`
	`}`

9.1.53. *<row>*

<row> contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]	
Module	figures
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)
Contained by	**figures:** table
May contain	**figures:** cell

Example	`<row role="data">`
	` <cell role="label">Classics</cell>`
	` <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>`
	`</row>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

9.1.54. <rs>

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.5.1. Referring Strings]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **namesdates:** country org settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Example	```<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day, <q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at last?</q>```
Content model	```<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>```

Schema Declaration	```element rs
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.naming.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   macro.phraseSeq
	}```

9.1.55. <settlement>

<settlement> contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	**core:** add address author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title

	figures: cell header: change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence namesdates: country org settlement textcrit: witness textstructure: dateline opener transcr: supplied
May contain	core: add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title header: idno namesdates: country settlement transcr: subst supplied character data
Example	``` <placeName> <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement> <region>Scotland</region> </placeName> ```
Content model	``` <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element settlement
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.naming.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   att.datable.attributes,
	   macro.phraseSeq
	}
	``

9.1.56. <sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: p figures: table textcrit: listWit
Example	``` <sourceDesc> <bibl> <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>. <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>. </bibl> </sourceDesc> ```
Example	``` <sourceDesc> Born digital: no previous source exists. </sourceDesc> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <alternate>
	  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
	   <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
	   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
	  </alternate>
	 </alternate>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	
| | ```
element sourceDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   (
      model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
   )
}
``` |

9.1.57. *<street>*

<street> contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.5.2. Addresses]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addrPart
Contained by	**core:** address
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.
| **Example** | ```
<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<street>
 <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road
</street>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
``` |

9.1.58. *<subst>*

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	**core:** add author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness

	textstructure: <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> **transcr:** <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>del</u> <u>lb</u> <u>pb</u>
Example	``` ... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del> <subst> <add>T</add> ~~t~~ </subst>he expressed ```
Example	``` that he and his Sister Mi#s D — <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be <subst> ~~very~~ <lb/> <add>principally</add> </subst> remembered in her Will. ```
Example	``` <ab>#<subst> <add place="above">##</add> ~~#~~ </subst> #########<subst> <add place="above">##</add> ~~#~~ </subst> #########<subst> <add place="above">##</add> ~~#~~ </subst> </ab> ```
Example	``` <subst> <del> <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/> </del> <add>apple</add> </subst> ```
Schematron	<s:assert test="child::tei:add and (child::tei:del or child::tei:surplus)"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del or surplus</s:assert>
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="add"/> <elementRef key="surplus"/> <elementRef key="del"/> <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Schema Declaration	```
	element subst
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.transcriptional.attributes,
	   att.dimensions.attributes,
	   (add | surplus | del | model.milestoneLike)+
	}
	``

9.1.59. <supplied>

<supplied> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant) <u>att.dimensions</u> (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (<u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
	reason one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. *overbinding*, *faded-ink*, *lost-folio*, *omitted-in-original*. **Status** Optional

	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace

Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>author</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>editor</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>street</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>cell</u> **header:** <u>change</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textstructure:** <u>dateline</u> <u>opener</u> **transcr:** <u>supplied</u>
May contain	**core:** <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>date</u> <u>del</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>rs</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> **figures:** <u>table</u> **header:** <u>idno</u> **namesdates:** <u>country</u> <u>settlement</u> **textcrit:** <u>listWit</u> **transcr:** <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Note	The <damage>, <u><gap></u>, <u><del></u>, <unclear> and <u><supplied></u> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.
| **Example** | ```
I am dr Sr yr
<supplied reason="illegible"
 source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble Servt</supplied>
 Sydney Smith
``` |
| **Example** | ```
<supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of Bejar
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element supplied
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   macro.paraContent
}
``` |

9.1.60. <surface>

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.coordinated</u> (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points) <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls) <u>att.typed</u> (@type, @subtype)

	attachment	describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface
		Status Optional
		Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u>
		Sample values include: **glued** glued in place
		pinned pinned or stapled in place

		sewn
		sewn in place
	flipping	indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.truthValue

Contained by	**transcr:** facsimile surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**core:** gap graphic lb note pb **transcr:** surface surfaceGrp

Note	The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a bill-board, a scroll, a leaf etc.
	    The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid *lrx - ulx* units wide and *uly - lry* units high.
	    The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.
	    Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> element.

Example	``` <facsimile> <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300"> <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/> </surface> </facsimile> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <sequence>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <classRef key="model.global"/>
	   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
	   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
	  </alternate>
	  <sequence minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <alternate>
	    <elementRef key="zone"/>
	    <elementRef key="line"/>
	    <elementRef key="path"/>
	    <elementRef key="surface"/>
	    <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
	   </alternate>
	   <classRef key="model.global"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>
	 </sequence>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element surface
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.coordinated.attributes,
	   att.declaring.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   attribute attachment { text }?,
	   attribute flipping { text }?,
	   (
	      (model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike)*,
	      ((zone | line | path | surface | surfaceGrp), model.global*)*
	   )
	}
	``

9.1.61. <surfaceGrp>

<surfaceGrp> defines any kind of useful grouping of written surfaces, for example the recto and verso of a single leaf, which the encoder wishes to treat as a single unit. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren-dition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs

	(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	**transcr:** facsimile surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**core:** gap lb note pb **transcr:** surface surfaceGrp
Note	Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.
| **Example** | ```
<sourceDoc>
 <surfaceGrp>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200"
   lry="300">
   <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200"
   lry="300">
   <graphic url="Bovelles-49v.png"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="surface"/>
  <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element surfaceGrp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( model.global | surface | surfaceGrp )+
}
``` |

9.1.62. <table>

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]		
Module	figures	
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)	
	rows	indicates the number of rows in the table.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.count
	Note	If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows. Rows should be presented from top to bottom.
	cols	(columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.count
	Note	If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns. Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.
Member of	model.listLike	
Contained by	**core:** add del head hi note p q quote ref title **figures:** cell **header:** change handNote licence sourceDesc **textcrit:** witness	

	textstructure: body div transcr: supplied
May contain	core: gap graphic head lb note pb figures: row textstructure: dateline
Note	Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.
Example	``` <table rows="4" cols="4"> <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head> <row role="label"> <cell role="data"/> <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell> <cell role="data">Beds</cell> <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell> </row> <row role="data"> <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell> <cell role="data">5</cell> <cell role="data">8</cell> <cell role="data">128</cell> </row> <row role="data"> <cell role="label">Thetford</cell> <cell role="data">3</cell> <cell role="data">6</cell> <cell role="data">36</cell> </row> <row role="data"> <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell> <cell role="data">3</cell> <cell role="data">5</cell> <cell role="data">20</cell> </row> <row role="data"> <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell> <cell role="data">1</cell> <cell role="data">11</cell> <cell role="data">22</cell> </row> </table> ```

Content model	```
	<content>
	 <sequence>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
	   <classRef key="model.global"/>
	  </alternate>
	  <alternate>
	   <sequence minOccurs="1"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded">
	    <elementRef key="row"/>
	    <classRef key="model.global"
	     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   </sequence>
	   <sequence minOccurs="1"
	    maxOccurs="unbounded">
	    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
	    <classRef key="model.global"
	     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	   </sequence>
	  </alternate>
	  <sequence minOccurs="0"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded">
	   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
	   <classRef key="model.global"
	    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>
	 </sequence>
	</content>
	``

Schema Declaration	```
	element table
	{
	   att.global.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   attribute rows { text }?,
	   attribute cols { text }?,
	   (
	      (model.headLike | model.global)*,
	      ((row, model.global*)+
		(model.graphicLike, model.global*)+),
		      (model.divBottom, model.global*)*
		``

```
               )
             }
```

9.1.63. <teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
Contained by	**textstructure:** <u>TEI</u>
May contain	**header:** <u>fileDesc</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>revisionDesc</u>
Note	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example	

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
   <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
   <author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
    <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
   </respStmt>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
    <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
   </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
   <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
   <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
   </address>
   <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
   <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
   </availability>
   <date when="1968">1968</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
   <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,
       1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
 </fileDesc>
 <encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
   <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling
       concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the
       editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
   <correction>
    <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
   </correction>
   <normalization>
    <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured
        forms are not encoded.</p>
   </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
   <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.*)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
    <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that
        listed here: <list>
     <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
     </item>
     <item>a period</item>
     <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
     </item>
     <item>a space</item>
     <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
     </item>
    </list>
   </p>
  </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
 </encodingDesc>
 <revisionDesc>
```

```
      <list>
        <item>
         <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
        <item>
         <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
       </list>
     </revisionDesc>
   </teiHeader>
```

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"`
	`   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"`
	`   minOccurs="0"/>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element teiHeader`
	`{`
	`    att.global.attributes,`
	`    ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )`
	`}`

9.1.64. <term>

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef)
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	**core:** add author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode creation handNote keywords language licence **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **transcr:** subst supplied character data

Note	When this element appears within an <index> element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a <gloss> element by means of its *ref* attribute; alternatively a <gloss> element may point to a <term> element by means of its *target* attribute.
	  In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.
	  As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

Example	
| **Example** | ```
A computational device that infers structure
 from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history
 of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.
``` |
| **Example** | ```
We may define <term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as
<gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed
 through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the
 fiction.</gloss>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as
<gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed
 through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the
 fiction.</gloss>
``` |
| **Example** | ```
We discuss Leech's concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> below.
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element term
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.cReferencing.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq
}
``` |

9.1.65. <text>

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.resource
Contained by	textstructure: TEI
May contain	**core:** gap lb note pb **textstructure:** body
Note	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.
| **Example** | ```
<text>
 <front>
  <docTitle>
   <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
 </front>
 <body>
  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
  <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
 </body>
</text>
``` |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic: <br><br> ```
<text>
 <front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
 </front>
 <group>
  <text>
<!-- first text -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second text -->
  </text>
 </group>
``` |

	``</text>``
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate>
   <elementRef key="body"/>
   <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
   <elementRef key="back"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element text
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( front, model.global* )?,
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( back, model.global* )?
   )
}
``` |

9.1.66. *<textClass>*

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.declarable</u> (@default)
Member of	<u>model.profileDescPart</u>
Contained by	**header:** <u>profileDesc</u>
May contain	**header:** <u>classCode</u> <u>keywords</u>
| **Example** | ```
<taxonomy>
 <category xml:id="acprose">
  <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
 </category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
 <catRef target="#acprose"/>
 <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
 <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
  <list>
   <item>End of the world</item>
   <item>History - philosophy</item>
  </list>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="classCode"/>
  <elementRef key="catRef"/>
  <elementRef key="keywords"/>
``` |

| | ```
    </alternate>
  </content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element textClass
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   ( classCode | catRef | keywords )*
}
``` |

9.1.67. *<title>*

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	

Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

type	classifies the title according to some convenient typology.	
	Derived from	att.typed
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Sample values include:	**main** main title
		sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part
		alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known
		short abbreviated form of title
		desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title
	Note	This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.
level	indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are:	**a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

	m	(monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works
	j	(journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper
	s	(series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection
	u	(unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)
	Note	The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an `<analytic>` element is *ipso facto* of level 'a', and one appearing within a `<series>` element of level 's'. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	**core:** add author date del editor head hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref resp rs street term title **figures:** cell **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence titleStmt **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** witness **textstructure:** dateline opener **transcr:** supplied
May contain	**core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note pb q quote ref rs term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst supplied character data
Note	The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class **att.canonical** may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.
Example	```<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989</title>```
Example	```<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>```
Example	```<title type="full"> <title type="main">Synthèse</title> <title type="sub">an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title> </title>```
Content model	```<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>```
Schema Declaration	```element title```

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  attribute type { text }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

9.1.68. <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** author editor respStmt title

Example	<pre><titleStmt>
	 <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title>
	 <respStmt>
	  <resp>compiled by</resp>
	  <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
	 </respStmt>
	</titleStmt></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <sequence>
	  <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
	   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <classRef key="model.respLike"
	   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	 </sequence>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, (title+, model.respLike*) }

9.1.69. <witness>

<witness> contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.analytic</u> (@ana)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@cert, @resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Contained by	**textcrit:** listWit
May contain	**core:** address date hi name note q quote ref rs term title **figures:** table **header:** idno **namesdates:** country settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst character data
Note	The content of the <u><witness></u> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

Example	<pre><listWit>
	 <witness xml:id="EL">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
	 <witness xml:id="HG">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
	   Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
	 <witness xml:id="RA2">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149</pre>

| | ```
    (see further <ptr target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRP149"/>)</witness>
</listWit>
``` |
| **Content model** | ```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <elementRef key="note"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
``` |
| **Schema Declaration** | ```
element witness
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter | note )*
}
``` |

9.2. Model classes

9.2.1. model.addrPart

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	address
Members	model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs] postCode street

9.2.2. model.addressLike

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data
Members	address

9.2.3. model.attributable

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.phraseSeq model.inter
Members	model.quoteLike[quote]

9.2.4. model.availabilityPart

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	availability
Members	licence

9.2.5. model.common

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	model.divPart[model.lLike model.pLike[p]] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[quote]] model.biblLike model.egLike model.labelLike model.listLike[listWit table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike] q

Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

9.2.6. model.correspActionPart

model.correspActionPart groups elements which define the parts (usually names, dates and places) of one action related to the correspondence.	
Module	tei
Used by	correspAction
Members	model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs] note

9.2.7. model.correspDescPart

model.correspDescPart groups together metadata elements for describing correspondence	
Module	tei
Used by	correspDesc
Members	correspAction note

9.2.8. model.dateLike

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data
Members	date

9.2.9. model.divBottom

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div table
Members	model.divBottomPart model.divWrapper[dateline]

9.2.10. model.divLike

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	div

9.2.11. model.divPart

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.specialPara model.common
Members	model.lLike model.pLike[p]
Note	Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

9.2.12. model.divTop

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] opener] model.divWrapper[dateline]

9.2.13. model.divTopPart

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.divTop
Members	model.headLike[head] opener

9.2.14. model.divWrapper

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.divBottom model.divTop
Members	dateline

9.2.15. model.emphLike

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	term title

9.2.16. model.global

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	address body date dateline div head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener person surface surfaceGrp table text
Members	model.global.edit[gap] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[lb pb] model.noteLike[note]

9.2.17. model.global.edit

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global
Members	gap

9.2.18. model.graphicLike

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]	
Module	tei
Used by	facsimile model.phrase surface table
Members	graphic

9.2.19. model.headLike

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.	
Module	tei
Used by	listWit model.divTopPart org table
Members	head

9.2.20. model.hiLike

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	hi q

9.2.21. model.highlighted

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.phrase
Members	model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike[hi q]

9.2.22. model.inter

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	head macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common witness
Members	model.attributable[model.quoteLike[quote]] model.biblLike model.egLike model.labelLike model.listLike[listWit table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike

9.2.23. model.limitedPhrase

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	creation macro.phraseSeq.limited witness
Members	model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike[hi q] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial[subst] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref]

9.2.24. model.listLike

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.7. Lists]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.inter sourceDesc
Members	listWit table

9.2.25. model.milestoneLike

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.10.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global org subst
Members	lb pb

9.2.26. model.nameLike

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.addrPart model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data org

Members	model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart model.placeState-Like[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

9.2.27. model.nameLike.agent

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike respStmt
Members	name
Note	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

9.2.28. model.noteLike

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global org
Members	note

9.2.29. model.orgPart

model.orgPart groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	org
Members	model.eventLike

9.2.30. model.pLike

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.	
Module	tei
Used by	availability correspAction correspDesc langUsage model.divPart org particDesc person publicationStmt sourceDesc
Members	p

9.2.31. model.pPart.data

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members	model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs]

9.2.32. model.pPart.edit

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.phrase
Members	model.pPart.editorial[subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add del supplied]

9.2.33. model.pPart.editorial

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members	subst

9.2.34. model.pPart.transcriptional

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.edit
Members	add del supplied

9.2.35. model.personLike

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	org particDesc
Members	org person

9.2.36. model.personPart

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]	
Module	tei
Used by	person
Members	model.biblLike model.eventLike model.persStateLike idno name

9.2.37. model.phrase

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	date dateline head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener
Members	model.graphicLike[graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike[hi q]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add del supplied]] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref] model.segLike model.specDescLike
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

9.2.38. model.placeNamePart

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.placeStateLike
Members	country settlement

9.2.39. model.placeStateLike

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike

Members	model.placeNamePart[country settlement]

9.2.40. model.profileDescPart

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	profileDesc
Members	correspDesc creation handNotes langUsage particDesc textClass

9.2.41. model.ptrLike

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Members	ref

9.2.42. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	publisher
Note	The 'agency' child elements, while not required, are required if one of the 'detail' child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a 'detail' child element without a preceding 'agency' child element. See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

9.2.43. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	model.ptrLike[ref] address availability date idno pubPlace
Note	A 'detail' child element may not occur unless an 'agency' child element precedes it. See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

9.2.44. model.quoteLike

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.attributable
Members	quote

9.2.45. model.resource

model.resource groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	TEI
Members	facsimile text

9.2.46. model.respLike

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.	
Module	tei

Used by	titleStmt
Members	author editor respStmt

9.2.47. model.teiHeaderPart

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.	
Module	tei
Used by	teiHeader
Members	profileDesc

9.3. Attribute classes

9.3.1. att.ascribed

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]	
Module	tei
Members	att.ascribed.directed[q] change
Attributes	Attributes

<div style="margin-left:2em">

who   indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (`<sp>`) in the body of the play are linked to `<castItem>` elements in the `<castList>` using the *who* attribute.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
 <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#Barnardo">
 <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
 <l n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Francisco">
 <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
 <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

Note	For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <u><person></u> element.

</div>

9.3.2. att.ascribed.directed

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]	
Module	tei
Members	q
Attributes	Attributes att.ascribed (@who)

<div style="margin-left:2em">

toWhom   indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.

Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (`<sp>`) in the body of the play are linked to `<castItem>` elements in

</div>

the `<castList>` using the *toWhom* attribute, which is used to speci-
fy who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the `<stage>` includes
toWhom to indicate the directionality of the action.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil"
 toWhom="#lov">
 <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
 <l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#lov"
 toWhom="#emil">
 <speaker>Lov.</speaker>
 <l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
 <stage who="emil"
  toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
 <l>But that poor helpless wretch—</l>
</sp>
```

Note	To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a *toWhom* attribute.

9.3.3. att.breaking

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	tei
Members	lb pb
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>break</td><td colspan="2">indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Recommended</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>teidata.enumerated</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Sample values include**</td><td>**yes**
the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

no
the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

maybe
the encoding does not take any position on this issue.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">In the following lines from the 'Dream of the Rood', linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *l#ðost* and *reord-berendum*.</td></tr>
</table>

```
<ab> ...e#esa tome iu ic#æs #e#orden #ita heardo#t .
 leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes
 #e# rihtne #erymde reord be<lb break="no"/>
 rendum h#æt me þa#e#eorðode #uldres ealdor ofer...
</ab>
```

9.3.4. att.cReferencing

att.cReferencing provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.	
Module	tei
Members	ref term
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">Attributes</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>cRef</td><td colspan="2">(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <code><refsDecl></code> element in the TEI header</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>teidata.text</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Note**</td><td>The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.
　　The <code><refsDecl></code> to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute.
　　Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <code><ptr></code> element.</td></tr>
</table>

9.3.5. att.canonical

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]	
Module	tei
Members	att.naming[att.personal[name] author country editor pubPlace rs settlement] correspDesc date publisher resp respStmt term title
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">Attributes</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>key</td><td colspan="2">provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>teidata.text</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2">
<pre>
<author>
 <name key="name 427308"
  type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</name>
</author>
</pre>
<pre>
<author>
 <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
  ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
</pre>
</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Note**</td><td>The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.
　　No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>ref</td><td colspan="2">(reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</td></tr>
</table>

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
 type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

Note	The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.	

9.3.6. att.coordinated

att.coordinated provides attributes which can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module	transcr
Members	surface

Attributes	Attributes		
	start	indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.pointer
	ulx	gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	uly	gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	lrx	gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	lry	gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	points	identifies a two dimensional area by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	3–# occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace

9.3.7. att.datable

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

Module	tei
Members	change country creation date idno licence name resp settlement title

Attributes	Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)	
	calendar	indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.pointer
		Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0"> @calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```
He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date calendar="#julian"
 when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32,
 O.S.</date>).
```

		Note	Note that the *calendar* attribute (unlike *datingMethod* defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized.
	period	supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.pointer
Note		This 'superclass' provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.	

9.3.8. att.datable.custom

att.datable.custom provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.3.7. Dates and Times]

Module	namesdates
Members	att.datable[change country creation date idno licence name resp settlement title]
Attributes	Attributes

	when-custom	supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system

```
<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the
<date when="1040-03-06"
  when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH
</date>.</p>
<p>The current world will end at the
<date when="2012-12-21"
  when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p>
<p>The Battle of Meggidu
 (<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</date>).</p>
<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub
<date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</date>
</p>
```

Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The *when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.

	notBefore-custom	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.	
		Status	Optional

		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
	notAfter-custom	specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
	from-custom	indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace

```
<event xml:id="FIRE1"
 datingMethod="#julian"
 from-custom="1666-09-02"
 to-custom="1666-09-05">
 <head>The Great Fire of London</head>
 <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part
   of the city of London.</p>
</event>
```

	to-custom	indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
	datingPoint	supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.pointer</u>
	datingMethod	supplies a pointer to a `<calendar>` element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.pointer</u>

```
Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne
 e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare
<date when-custom="1598"
 calendar="#julian"
 datingMethod="#julian">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow
 Citizen of London.
```

In this example, the *calendar* attribute points to a `<calendar>` element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <u><date></u> element is a Julian date, and the *datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *when-custom* attribute value is Julian too.

```
<date when="1382-06-28"
 when-custom="6890-06-20"
 datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"> µ### ####### ### <num>#</num> ##### <num>###</num>
</date>
```

In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in *when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.

		Note	Note that the *datingMethod* attribute (unlike *calendar* defined in **att.datable**) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *when-custom* or other *X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the element.

9.3.9. att.datable.iso

att.datable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
Module	namesdates

Members	att.datable[change country creation date idno licence name resp settlement title]
Attributes	Attributes

	when-iso	supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.temporal.iso

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.

```
<date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</dat
<time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>
<time when-iso="14">around two</time>
<time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>
```

All of the examples of the *when* attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute.

```
He likes to be punctual. I said <q>
 <time when-iso="12">around noon</time>
</q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.
```

The second occurence of `<time>` could have been encoded with the *when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurence could not.

	notBefore-iso	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.temporal.iso

	notAfter-iso	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.temporal.iso

	from-iso	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.temporal.iso

	to-iso	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.temporal.iso

Note	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.

If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

9.3.10. att.datable.w3c

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
Module	tei
Members	att.datable[change country creation date idno licence name resp settlement title]

Attributes	Attributes		
	when	supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
 <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
 <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
 <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
 <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
 <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
 <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
 <date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
 <date when="--08">August</date>
 <date when="2006">MMVI</date>
 <date when="0056">AD 56</date>
 <date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

```
This list begins in
the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after
Pentecost, in that year the
<date calendar="#julian"
when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
```

```
<opener>
 <dateline>
  <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
  <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
 </dateline>
 <salute>To
   Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

	notBefore	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c
	notAfter	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c
	from	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c
	to	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.temporal.w3c

Schematron	`<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>`
Schematron	`<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>`
Schematron	`<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>`
Example	`<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>`
Note	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar.

| The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used. |
| Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used. |

9.3.11. att.declarable

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

Module	tei
Members	availability correspDesc langUsage particDesc sourceDesc textClass

Attributes	Attributes
	
	default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.
	
	    Status Optional
	
	    Datatype teidata.truthValue
	
	    Legal values are: **true**
	        This element is selected if its parent is selected
	
	        false
	        This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true.

9.3.12. att.declaring

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

Module	tei
Members	body div facsimile graphic p ref surface surfaceGrp term text

Attributes	Attributes
	
	decls identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.
	
	    Status Optional
	
	    Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

9.3.13. att.dimensions

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module	tei
Members	add date del gap subst supplied

Attributes	Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)
	
	unit names the unit used for the measurement
	
	    Status Optional
	
	    Datatype teidata.enumerated
	
	    Suggested values include: **cm**
	        (centimetres)
	
	        mm

		(millimetres)
	in	
		(inches)
	line	
		lines of text
	char	
		(characters) characters of text
quantity	specifies the length in the units specified	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.numeric
extent	indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.text
	`<gap extent="5 words"/>`	
	`<height extent="half the page"/>`	
precision	characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.certainty
scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
	Sample values include:	**all**
		measurement applies to all instances.
		most
		measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.
		range
		measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

9.3.14. att.divLike

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module	tei
Members	div
Attributes	Attributes att.fragmentable (@part)
	org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are: **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.
	uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

	sample	indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	**initial** division lacks material present at end in source.
			medial division lacks material at start and end.
			final division lacks material at start.
			unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.
			complete division is not a sample.[Default]

9.3.15. att.docStatus

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.			
Module	tei		
Members	change revisionDesc		
Attributes	Attributes		
	status	describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Sample values include:	**approved**
			candidate
			cleared
			deprecated
			draft [Default]
			embargoed
			expired
			frozen
			galley
			proposed
			published

		rec-om-men-da-tion sub-mit-ted un-fin-ished with-drawn

Example		`<revisionDesc status="published">`
		` <change when="2010-10-21"`
		`  status="published"/>`
		` <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>`
		` <change when="2010-08-02"`
		`  status="embargoed"/>`
		` <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"`
		`  who="#MSM"/>`
		` <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"`
		`  who="#LB"/>`
		`</revisionDesc>`

9.3.16. att.editLike

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]	
Module	tei
Members	att.transcriptional[add del subst] date gap name org person supplied
Attributes	Attributes
	evidence — indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
	Suggested values include:
	in-ter-nal there is internal evidence to support the interven- tion.
	ex-ter-nal there is external evidence to support the interven- tion.
	con-jec-ture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.
	instant — indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.xTruthValue
	Default false
Note	The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial in- tervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manu- scripts etc. 　Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

9.3.17. att.edition

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>lb</u> <u>pb</u>
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">ed</td><td colspan="2">(edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.</td></tr>
</table>

Attributes

ed   (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace

edRef   (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

Example

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

Example

```
<listBibl>
 <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
 <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>
 </bibl>
 <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
 <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
 </bibl>
</listBibl>
<!-- ... -->
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of
 the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
 strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of their ancient culture,
 still living their personal lives in zest and endless
 novelty of action, … I saw myself still
 preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
 con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>
```

9.3.18. att.fragmentable

att.fragmentable provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>att.divLike[div]</u> <u>p</u>
Attributes	Attributes

Attributes

part   specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>
	Legal values are:	**Y**
		(yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect
		N
		(no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]

		I	
			(initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element
		M	
			(medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element
		F	
			(final) this is the final part of a fragmented element
	Note		The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

9.3.19. att.global

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]			
Module	tei		
Members	TEI add address author availability body cell change classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date dateline del div editor facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes head hi idno keywords langUsage language lb licence listWit name note opener org p particDesc pb person postCode profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs settlement sourceDesc street subst supplied surface surfaceGrp table teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt witness		
Attributes	Attributes att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@coresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)		
	xml:id	(identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	ID
		Note	The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10. Reference Systems.
	n	(number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.text
		Note	The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.
	xml:lang	(language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.language
| | | | ```
<p> … The consequences of
 this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
 (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
ancestral territorial organization.</p>
``` |
| | | **Note** | The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHead- |

er> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <u>language</u> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.

xml:base	provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
 <head>Bibliography</head>
 <listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
  <bibl>
   <author>
    <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
   </author>
   <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
    <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <author>
    <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
   </author>
   <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
    <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <author>
    <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
   </author>
   <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
    <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
   </ref>
  </bibl>
 </listBibl>
</div>
```

xml:space	signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Legal values are: **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable
	preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space
	Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

9.3.20. att.global.analytic

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses 17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module	analysis
Members	att.global[TEI <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>author</u> <u>availability</u> <u>body</u> <u>cell</u> <u>change</u> <u>classCode</u> <u>correspAction</u> <u>cor-</u> <u>respDesc</u> <u>country</u> <u>creation</u> <u>date</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>del</u> <u>div</u> <u>editor</u> <u>facsimile</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hand-</u> <u>Note</u> <u>handNotes</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>idno</u> <u>keywords</u> <u>langUsage</u> <u>language</u> <u>lb</u> <u>licence</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>opener</u> <u>org</u> <u>p</u> <u>particDesc</u> <u>pb</u> <u>person</u> <u>postCode</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>publish-</u> <u>er</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>revisionDesc</u> <u>row</u> <u>rs</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>street</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>surface</u> <u>surfaceGrp</u> <u>table</u> <u>teiHeader</u> <u>term</u> <u>text</u> <u>textClass</u> <u>title</u> <u>titleStmt</u> <u>witness</u>]
Attributes	Attributes

ana   (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
Note	When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

9.3.21. att.global.change

att.global.change supplies the *change* attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

Module	transcr
Members	att.global[TEI <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>author</u> <u>availability</u> <u>body</u> <u>cell</u> <u>change</u> <u>classCode</u> <u>correspAction</u> <u>cor-</u> <u>respDesc</u> <u>country</u> <u>creation</u> <u>date</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>del</u> <u>div</u> <u>editor</u> <u>facsimile</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hand-</u> <u>Note</u> <u>handNotes</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>idno</u> <u>keywords</u> <u>langUsage</u> <u>language</u> <u>lb</u> <u>licence</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>opener</u> <u>org</u> <u>p</u> <u>particDesc</u> <u>pb</u> <u>person</u> <u>postCode</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>publish-</u> <u>er</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>revisionDesc</u> <u>row</u> <u>rs</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>street</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>surface</u> <u>surfaceGrp</u> <u>table</u> <u>teiHeader</u> <u>term</u> <u>text</u> <u>textClass</u> <u>title</u> <u>titleStmt</u> <u>witness</u>]
Attributes	Attributes

change   points to one or more <u><change></u> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.

Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space

9.3.22. att.global.facs

att.global.facs provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module	transcr
Members	att.global[TEI <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>author</u> <u>availability</u> <u>body</u> <u>cell</u> <u>change</u> <u>classCode</u> <u>correspAction</u> <u>cor-</u> <u>respDesc</u> <u>country</u> <u>creation</u> <u>date</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>del</u> <u>div</u> <u>editor</u> <u>facsimile</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>hand-</u> <u>Note</u> <u>handNotes</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>idno</u> <u>keywords</u> <u>langUsage</u> <u>language</u> <u>lb</u> <u>licence</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>opener</u> <u>org</u> <u>p</u> <u>particDesc</u> <u>pb</u> <u>person</u> <u>postCode</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>publish-</u> <u>er</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>revisionDesc</u> <u>row</u> <u>rs</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>street</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>surface</u> <u>surfaceGrp</u> <u>table</u> <u>teiHeader</u> <u>term</u> <u>text</u> <u>textClass</u> <u>title</u> <u>titleStmt</u> <u>witness</u>]
Attributes	Attributes

facs   (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space

9.3.23. att.global.linking

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

Module	linking
Members	att.global[TEI add address author availability body cell change classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date dateline del div editor facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes head hi idno keywords langUsage language lb licence listWit name note opener org p particDesc pb person postCode profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs settlement sourceDesc street subst supplied surface surfaceGrp table teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt witness]
Attributes	Attributes

corresp   (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

```
<group>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
   corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
</group>
```

In this example a `<group>` contains two <u><text></u>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```
<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><place xml:id="LOND1"
 corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
 <placeName>London</placeName>
 <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
 <persName type="lit">London</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Allegorical character representing the city of <placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">Londo
 </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
 <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
     allegorical character in mayoral shows.
  </p>
 </note>
</person>
```

In this example, a `<place>` element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <u><person></u> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

	synch	(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	sameAs	points to an element that is the same as the current element.
		Status Optional
		Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
	copyOf	points to an element of which the current element is a copy.
		Status Optional
		Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
		Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.
	next	points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
		Status Optional
		Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
		Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
	prev	(previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
		Status Optional
		Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u>
		Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
	exclude	points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	select	selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
		Note This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

9.3.24. att.global.rendition

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]	
Module	tei
Members	att.global[TEI <u>add</u> <u>address</u> <u>author</u> <u>availability</u> <u>body</u> <u>cell</u> <u>change</u> <u>classCode</u> <u>correspAction</u> <u>correspDesc</u> <u>country</u> <u>creation</u> <u>date</u> <u>dateline</u> <u>del</u> <u>div</u> <u>editor</u> <u>facsimile</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>gap</u> <u>graphic</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>handNotes</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>idno</u> <u>keywords</u> <u>langUsage</u> <u>language</u> <u>lb</u> <u>licence</u> <u>listWit</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>opener</u> <u>org</u> <u>p</u> <u>particDesc</u> <u>pb</u> <u>person</u> <u>postCode</u> <u>profileDesc</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>q</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>revisionDesc</u> <u>row</u> <u>rs</u> <u>settlement</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>street</u> <u>subst</u> <u>supplied</u> <u>surface</u> <u>surfaceGrp</u> <u>table</u> <u>teiHeader</u> <u>term</u> <u>text</u> <u>textClass</u> <u>title</u> <u>titleStmt</u> <u>witness</u>]

Attributes	Attributes		
	rend		(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
<lb/>On Her <lb/>
 <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

		Note	These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.
	style		contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	<u>teidata.text</u>

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
 <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

| | | Note | Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output. |

The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

If *style* and *rendition* are both present on an element, then *style* overrides or complements *rendition*. *style* should not be used in conjunction with *rend*, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.

	rendition		points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
 <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition xml:id="sc"
 scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
 scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
 scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

| | | Note | The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper. |

If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *rend*. Where both *rendition*

| | | and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former. |
| | | Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute. |

9.3.25. att.global.responsibility

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

Module	tei
Members	att.global[TEI add address author availability body cell change classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date dateline del div editor facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes head hi idno keywords langUsage language lb licence listWit name note opener org p particDesc pb person postCode profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs settlement sourceDesc street subst supplied surface surfaceGrp table teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt witness]

Attributes	Attributes		
	cert		(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.probCert
	resp		(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
		Note	To reduce the ambiguity of a *resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example	`Blessed are the`
	`<choice>`
	` <sic>cheesemakers</sic>`
	` <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>`
	`</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.`

Example	`<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	` <l>Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing`
	`   sla<choice>`
	`   <sic>n</sic>`
	`   <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>`
	`  </choice>es,</l>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`</lg>`
	`<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">`
	` <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>`
	` <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>`
	`</respStmt>`

9.3.26. att.global.source

att.global.source provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

Module	tei

Members	att.global[TEI add address author availability body cell change classCode correspAction cor-respDesc country creation date dateline del div editor facsimile fileDesc gap graphic hand-Note handNotes head hi idno keywords langUsage language lb licence listWit name note opener org p particDesc pb person postCode profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publish-er q quote ref resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs settlement sourceDesc street subst supplied surface surfaceGrp table teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt witness]
Attributes	Attributes
	source — specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.
	Status — Optional
	Datatype — 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
	Note — The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as `<schemaSpec>` or `<moduleRef>` it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.
On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibli-ographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.
In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an ab-solute URI as documented in a `<prefixDef>`.
If more than one location is specified, the default as-sumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated.

| Example | `<p>`
`<!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">`
`  term.</quote>`
`<!-- ... -->`
`</p>` |
|---|---|

| Example | `<p>`
`<!-- ... -->`
` <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the`
`   less we seem to know.</quote>`
`<!-- ... -->`
`</p>`
`<!-- ... -->`
`<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">`
` <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,`
`<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publisher>University of`
`   Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.`
`</bibl>` |
|---|---|

| Example | `<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>`
Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release. |
|---|---|

| Example | `<schemaSpec ident="myODD"`
` source="mycompiledODD.xml">`
`<!-- further declarations specifying the components required -->`
`</schemaSpec>`
Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml. |
|---|---|

9.3.27. att.handFeatures

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]	
Module	tei
Members	handNote
Attributes	Attributes
	scribe — gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.
	Status — Optional
	Datatype — teidata.name

	scribeRef	points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <u><person></u> element elsewhere in the description.		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space	
	script	characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc.		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.name</u> separated by whitespace	
	scriptRef	points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a `<scriptNote>` element elsewhere in the description.		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space	
	medium	describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil*		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace	
	scope	specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>	
		Legal values are:	sole	only this hand is used throughout the manuscript
			ma-jor	this hand is used through most of the manuscript
			mi-nor	this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript
Note		Usually either *script* or *scriptRef*, and similarly, either *scribe* or *scribeRef*, will be supplied.		

9.3.28. att.internetMedia

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>att.media[graphic]</u> <u>ref</u>
Attributes	Attributes
	mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace
Example	In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.
	``
	<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"
	target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>
	``
Note	This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

9.3.29. att.media

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.			
Module	tei		
Members	graphic		
Attributes	Attributes att.internetMedia (@mimeType)		
	width	Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.outputMeasurement
	height	Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.outputMeasurement
	scale	Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric

9.3.30. att.naming

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms]			
Module	tei		
Members	att.personal[name] author country editor pubPlace rs settlement		
Attributes	Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)		
	role	may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
	nymRef	(reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
		Note	The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

9.3.31. att.notated

att.notated provides an attribute to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.			
Module	tei		
Members	quote		
Attributes	Attributes		
	notation	names the notation used for the content of the element.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated

9.3.32. att.personal

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>name</u>
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.naming</u> (@role, @nymRef) (<u>att.canonical</u> (@key, @ref))

full	indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.		
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	<u>teidata.enumerated</u>	
	Legal values are:	**yes**	the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]
		abb	(abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.
		init	(initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.
sort	specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.		
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	<u>teidata.count</u>	

9.3.33. att.placement

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>add</u> <u>head</u> <u>note</u>
Attributes	Attributes

place	specifies where this item is placed.		
	Status	Recommended	
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace	
	Suggested values include:	**below**	below the line
		bottom	at the foot of the page
		margin	in the margin (left, right, or both)
		top	at the top of the page
		opposite	on the opposite, i.e. facing, page
		overleaf	on the other side of the leaf
		above	above the line

		end	
			at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.
		in-	
		line	within the body of the text.
		in-	
		space	in a predefined space, for example left by an ear-lier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
 foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

9.3.34. att.pointing

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module	tei
Members	licence note ref term
Attributes	Attributes

targetLang	specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination refer-enced by *target*, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.language
	Schematron <sch:rule context-t="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:as-sert> </sch:rule>

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

	Note	The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a pri-vate use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <lan-guage> element with a matching value for its *ident* at-tribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.
target	specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
	Note	One or more syntactically valid URI references, separat-ed by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Con-sortium`.

	evaluate	specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	**all**
			if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.
			one
			if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.
			none
			no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.
		Note	If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

9.3.35. att.ranging

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.	
Module	tei
Members	att.dimensions[add date del gap subst supplied]
Attributes	Attributes

	atLeast	gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	atMost	gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	min	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.numeric
	confidence	specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.probability

| **Example** | ```
The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike">
 <gap reason="illegible"
  extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/>
</del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.
``` |
|---|---|

9.3.36. att.resourced

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

Module	tei
Members	graphic
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>url</td><td colspan="2">(uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Required</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>teidata.pointer</td></tr>
</table>

9.3.37. att.sortable

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

Module	tei
Members	correspAction idno listWit org person term witness
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>sortKey</td><td colspan="2">supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>teidata.word</td></tr>
</table>

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah
ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">
<term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first
cousin.
```

<table>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Note**</td><td>The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent
    Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.</td></tr>
</table>

9.3.38. att.spanning

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module	tei
Members	lb pb
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>spanTo</td><td colspan="2">indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td>teidata.pointer</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>**Schematron**</td><td>The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule></td></tr>
</table>

Note	The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

9.3.39. att.tableDecoration

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics and Notated Music]

Module	figures
Members	cell row

Attributes	Attributes			
	role	indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated	
		Suggested values include:	**la-bel**	labelling or descriptive information only.
			da-ta	data values.[Default]
		Note	When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *role* attribute of the parent <row> element.	
	rows	indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	teidata.count	
		Default	1	
		Note	A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.	
	cols	(columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.		
		Status	Optional	
		Datatype	teidata.count	
		Default	1	
		Note	A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.	

9.3.40. att.timed

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]

Module	tei
Members	gap

Attributes	Attributes		
	start	indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.pointer
		Note	If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

		end	indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.pointer
		Note	If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

9.3.41. att.transcriptional

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]			
Module	tei		
Members	add del subst		
Attributes	Attributes att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.written (@hand)		
	status	indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Sample values include:	**duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.
			duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original
			excessStart Some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.
			excessEnd the text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.
			shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
			shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
			partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
			unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]
		Note	Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

		Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.	
cause		documents the presumed cause for the intervention.	
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated	
seq		(sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.	
	Status	Optional	
	Datatype	teidata.count	

9.3.42. att.typed

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.5.1. Referring Strings 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]**	

Module	tei
Members	TEI add change correspAction correspDesc country date del div head idno lb name note org pb quote ref rs settlement surface surfaceGrp table term text title
Attributes	Attributes
	type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	``` <div type="verse"> <head>Night in Tarras</head> <lg type="stanza"> <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l> <l>…</l> </lg> <lg type="stanza"> <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l> <l>…</l> </lg> </div> ```
	Note The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of **att.typed**, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.
	subtype provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Note The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
Note	When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

9.3.43. att.written

att.written provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
Module	tei
Members	att.transcriptional[add del subst] div head hi note opener p text
Attributes	Attributes

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">hand   points to a <u><handNote></u> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Status**</td><td>Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>**Datatype**</td><td><u>teidata.pointer</u></td></tr>
</table>

9.4. Macros

9.4.1. macro.paraContent

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	add del hi p ref supplied title
Content model	

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

| **Declaration** | |

```
macro.paraContent =
   (
      text
    | model.gLike
    | model.phrase
    | model.inter
    | model.global
    | lg
    | model.lLike
   )*
```

9.4.2. macro.phraseSeq

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	author country editor name pubPlace publisher rs settlement street term
Content model	

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

| **Declaration** | |

```
macro.phraseSeq =
   ( text | model.gLike | model.attributable | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

9.4.3. macro.phraseSeq.limited

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	classCode language resp
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	``` macro.phraseSeq.limited = (text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global)* ```

9.4.4. macro.specialPara

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	cell change handNote licence note q quote
Content model	``` <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.divPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> ```

Declaration	```
	macro.specialPara =
	   (
	      text
	    | model.gLike
	    | model.phrase
	    | model.inter
	    | model.divPart
	    | model.global
	   )*
	``

9.5. Datatypes

9.5.1. teidata.certainty

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	``` <content> <valList type="closed"> <valItem ident="high"/> <valItem ident="medium"/> <valItem ident="low"/> <valItem ident="unknown"/> </valList> </content> ```
Declaration	``` teidata.certainty = "high"	"medium"	"low"	"unknown" ```
Note	Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

9.5.2. teidata.count

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • table/@rows • table/@cols
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger ```
Note	Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

9.5.3. teidata.duration.iso

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } ```
Example	`<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>`
Example	`<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>`
Example	`<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>`
Example	`<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>`
Note	A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

9.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration ```
Example	`<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>`
Example	`<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>`
Example	`<date dur="P7D">a week</date>`

Example	`<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>`
Note	A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

9.5.5. teidata.enumerated

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • <u>availability</u>/@status • <u>correspAction</u>/@type • <u>gap</u>/@reason • <u>gap</u>/@agent • <u>idno</u>/@type • <u>org</u>/@role • <u>person</u>/@role • <u>person</u>/@age • <u>q</u>/@type • <u>surface</u>/@attachment • <u>title</u>/@type • <u>title</u>/@level

Content model	`<content>`
	` <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.enumerated = teidata.word`
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

9.5.6. teidata.language

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • <u>language</u>/@ident

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate>`
	`  <dataRef name="language"/>`
	`  <valList>`
	`   <valItem ident=""/>`
	`  </valList>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.language = xsd:language	("")`

Note	The values for this attribute are language 'tags' as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.
	A 'language tag', per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language
> The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script
> The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region
> Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.

variant
> An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

extension
> An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use
> An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <u>\<language\></u> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <u>\<language\></u> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

sn
> Shona

zh-TW
> Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK
> Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL
> English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl
> Polish

es-MX
> Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419	
	Spanish as spoken in Latin America
	The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

9.5.7. *teidata.name*

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content> ```
Declaration	``` teidata.name = xsd:Name ```
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

9.5.8. *teidata.numeric*

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <alternate> <dataRef name="double"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/> <dataRef name="decimal"/> </alternate> </content> ```
Declaration	``` teidata.numeric = xsd:double	token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" }	xsd:decimal ```
Note	Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.
	To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.
	A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

9.5.9. *teidata.outputMeasurement*

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	``` <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/> </content> ```

Declaration	```
	teidata.outputMeasurement =
	  token
	   {
	     pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
	   }
	``

| Example | ```
<figure>
 <head>The TEI Logo</head>
 <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
   between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white
   background.</figDesc>
 <graphic height="600px" width="600px"
  url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
``` |
|---|---|
| Note | These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft. |

9.5.10. teidata.pattern

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module	tei
Used by	
| Content model | ```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"/>
</content>
``` |
| Declaration | ```
teidata.pattern = token
``` |
| Note | A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel *matches* each of the three strings)
Wikipedia
  This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema. |

9.5.11. teidata.point

teidata.point defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

Module	tei
Used by	
| Content model | ```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/>
</content>
``` |
| Declaration | ```
teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" }
``` |
| Example | ```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280">
  <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
   <graphic url="handwriting.png "/>
  </zone>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
``` |
| Note | A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not. |

9.5.12. teidata.pointer

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • change/@target • classCode/@scheme

- keywords/@scheme
- note/@targetEnd

Content model	`<content>`
	` <dataRef name="anyURI"/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI`
Note	The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://-mr----nx.mirbg4--n###.#########-#####.####/` is encoded as `http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

9.5.13. *teidata.probCert*

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

Module	tei
Used by	

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate>`
	`  <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>`
	`  <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.probCert = teidata.probability	teidata.certainty`

9.5.14. *teidata.probability*

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module	tei
Used by	teidata.probCert

Content model	`<content>`
	` <dataRef name="double"/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.probability = xsd:double`
Note	Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

9.5.15. *teidata.replacement*

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module	tei
Used by	

Content model	`<content>`
	` <textNode/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.replacement = text`

9.5.16. *teidata.sex*

teidata.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.

Module	tei
Used by	Element:

	• person/@sex
Content model	```<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content>```
Declaration	```teidata.sex = teidata.word```
Note	Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection.

9.5.17. teidata.temporal.iso

teidata.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </alternate> </content>```
Declaration	```teidata.temporal.iso = xsd:date	xsd:gYear	xsd:gMonth	xsd:gDay	xsd:gYearMonth	xsd:gMonthDay	xsd:time	xsd:dateTime	token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }```
Note	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. While ISO 8601 permits the use of both `00:00` and `24:00` to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of `24:00`.

9.5.18. teidata.temporal.w3c

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/>```

```
        <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
      </alternate>
    </content>
```

Declaration	`teidata.temporal.w3c =` `    xsd:date` `	xsd:gYear` `	xsd:gMonth` `	xsd:gDay` `	xsd:gYearMonth` `	xsd:gMonthDay` `	xsd:time` `	xsd:dateTime`
Note	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

9.5.19. *teidata.text*

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module	tei
Used by	

Content model	`<content>`
	` <dataRef name="string"/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.text = string`
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

9.5.20. *teidata.truthValue*

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • <u>note</u>/@anchored • <u>surface</u>/@flipping

Content model	`<content>`
	` <dataRef name="boolean"/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean`
Note	The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false. This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

9.5.21. *teidata.version*

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • <u>TEI</u>/@version

Content model	`<content>`
	` <dataRef name="token"`
	`  restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

Note	The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

9.5.22. *teidata.versionNumber*

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content>
<dataRef name="token"
restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/>
</content>```
Declaration	```teidata.versionNumber =
token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }```

9.5.23. *teidata.word*

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module	tei
Used by	teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement: • supplied/@reason
Content model	```<content>
<dataRef name="token"
restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>
</content>```
Declaration	```teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }```
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

9.5.24. *teidata.xTruthValue*

teidata.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content>
<alternate>
<dataRef name="boolean"/>
<valList>
<valItem ident="unknown"/>
<valItem ident="inapplicable"/>
</valList>
</alternate>
</content>```
Declaration	```teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean	("unknown" | "inapplicable")```
Note	In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

9.5.25. *teidata.xpath*

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	```<content>
<textNode/>
</content>```

Declaration	
| | ```
teidata.xpath = text
``` |
| Note | Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in .
    When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP. |